



COMSPHERE 3800 SERIES MODEMS MODELS 3810, 3811, AND 3820 USER'S GUIDE

Document No. 3810-A2-GB30-20

November 1996



COMSPHERE 3800 Series Modems Models 3810, 3811, and 3820

User's Guide
3810-A2-GB30-20

3rd Edition (November 1996)

Changes and enhancements to the product and to the information herein will be documented and issued as a new release.

For the 3800 Series standalone modems, the Universal Service Order Code (USOC) for Permissive mode is RJ11C and for Programmable mode is RJ41S or RJ45S. The Canadian equivalent to the USOC is CA11 for RJ11C, and CA41A and CA45A for RJ41S and RJ45S, respectively. For 3800 Series carrier-mounted modems, the USOC for Permissive mode is RJ21X and for Programmable mode is RJ27X. The Canadian equivalent to the USOC is CA21A for RJ21X and CA27A for RJ27X.

Warranty, Sales, and Service Information

Contact your sales or service representative directly for any help needed. For additional information concerning warranty, sales, service, repair, installation, documentation or training, use one of the following methods:

- **Via the Internet:** Visit the Paradyne World Wide Web site at <http://www.paradyne.com>
- **Via Telephone:** Call our automated call system to receive current information via fax or to speak with a company representative.
 - Within the U.S.A., call 1-800-870-2221
 - International, call 813-530-2340

Trademarks

All products and services mentioned herein are the trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks or registered service marks of their respective owners.



Printed on recycled paper

COPYRIGHT © 1996 Paradyne Corporation. All rights reserved.

This publication is protected by federal copyright law. No part of this publication may be copied or distributed, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any human or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, manual or otherwise, or disclosed to third parties without the express written permission of Paradyne Corporation, 8545 126th Avenue North, P.O. Box 2826, Largo, Florida 33779-2826.

Paradyne Corporation makes no representation or warranties with respect to the contents hereof and specifically disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Further, Paradyne Corporation reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation of Paradyne Corporation to notify any person of such revision or changes.

Important Safety Instructions

1. Read and follow all warning notices and instructions marked on the product or included in the manual.
2. This product is intended to be used with a three-wire grounding type plug – a plug which has a grounding pin. This is a safety feature. Equipment grounding is vital to ensure safe operation. Do not defeat the purpose of the grounding type plug by modifying the plug or using an adapter.

Prior to installation, use an outlet tester or a voltmeter to check the ac receptacle for the presence of earth ground. If the receptacle is not properly grounded, the installation must not continue until a qualified electrician has corrected the problem.

If a three-wire grounding type power source is not available, consult a qualified electrician to determine another method of grounding the equipment.

3. Slots and openings in the cabinet are provided for ventilation. To ensure reliable operation of the product and to protect it from overheating, these slots and openings must not be blocked or covered.
4. Do not allow anything to rest on the power cord and do not locate the product where persons will walk on the power cord.
5. Do not attempt to service this product yourself, as opening or removing covers may expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel.
6. General purpose cables are provided with this product. Special cables, which may be required by the regulatory inspection authority for the installation site, are the responsibility of the customer.
7. When installed in the final configuration, the product must comply with the applicable Safety Standards and regulatory requirements of the country in which it is installed. If necessary, consult with the appropriate regulatory agencies and inspection authorities to ensure compliance.
8. A rare phenomenon can create a voltage potential between the earth grounds of two or more buildings. If products installed in separate buildings are **interconnected**, the voltage potential may cause a hazardous condition. Consult a qualified electrical consultant to determine whether or not this phenomenon exists and, if necessary, implement corrective action prior to interconnecting the products.

In addition, if the equipment is to be used with telecommunications circuits, take the following precautions:

- Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
- Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
- Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
- Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines.
- Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

Notices

WARNING

THIS EQUIPMENT HAS BEEN TESTED AND FOUND TO COMPLY WITH THE LIMITS FOR A CLASS A DIGITAL DEVICE, PURSUANT TO PART 15 OF THE FCC RULES. THESE LIMITS ARE DESIGNED TO PROVIDE REASONABLE PROTECTION AGAINST HARMFUL INTERFERENCE WHEN THE EQUIPMENT IS OPERATED IN A COMMERCIAL ENVIRONMENT. THIS EQUIPMENT GENERATES, USES, AND CAN RADIATE RADIO FREQUENCY ENERGY AND, IF NOT INSTALLED AND USED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE INSTRUCTION MANUAL, MAY CAUSE HARMFUL INTERFERENCE TO RADIO COMMUNICATIONS. OPERATION OF THIS EQUIPMENT IN A RESIDENTIAL AREA IS LIKELY TO CAUSE HARMFUL INTERFERENCE IN WHICH CASE THE USER WILL BE REQUIRED TO CORRECT THE INTERFERENCE AT HIS OWN EXPENSE.

THE AUTHORITY TO OPERATE THIS EQUIPMENT IS CONDITIONED BY THE REQUIREMENTS THAT NO MODIFICATIONS WILL BE MADE TO THE EQUIPMENT UNLESS THE CHANGES OR MODIFICATIONS ARE EXPRESSLY APPROVED BY PARADYNE.

WARNING

TO USERS OF DIGITAL APPARATUS IN CANADA:

THIS CLASS A DIGITAL APPARATUS MEETS ALL REQUIREMENTS OF THE CANADIAN INTERFERENCE-CAUSING EQUIPMENT REGULATIONS.

CET APPAREIL NUMÉRIQUE DE LA CLASSE A RESPECTE TOUTES LES EXIGENCES DU RÈGLEMENT SUR LE MATÉRIEL BROUILLEUR DU CANADA.

The following warning applies to all Model 3811 modems.

WARNING

THE MODEL 3811 IS PROVIDED WITH A REPLACEABLE LITHIUM BATTERY. REPLACE THE BATTERY ONLY WITH THE SAME TYPE RECOMMENDED BY THE MANUFACTURER. DISCARD USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS.

LE MODÈLE 3811 EST FOURNI AVEC UNE PILE AU LITHIUM REMPLAÇABLE REMPLACER UNIQUEMENT AVEC UNE BATTERIE DU MÊME TYPE OU D'UN TYPE RECOMMANDÉ PAR LE CONSTRUCTEUR. METTRE AU RÉBUT LES BATTERIES USAGÉES CONFORMÉMENT AUX INSTRUCTIONS DU FABRICANT.

Government Requirements and Equipment Return

Certain governments require that instructions pertaining to modem connection to the public switched telephone network be included in the installation and operation manual. Specific instructions are listed in the following sections.

United States

Notice to Users of the Public Switched Telephone Network

1. This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules. On the equipment is a label that contains, among other information, the FCC registration number and ringer equivalence number (REN) for this equipment. The label is located on the bottom of the Model 3810 and 3820 modems. This label is located on the Model 3811's circuit card assembly. If requested, this information must be provided to the telephone company.
 2. Page A of this manual contains the Universal Service Order Codes (USOC) associated with the services on which the equipment is to be connected.
 3. The Ringer Equivalence (REN) is used to determine the quantity of devices which may be connected to the telephone line. Excessive RENs on the telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most, but not all areas, the sum of the RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to the line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the telephone company to determine the maximum RENs for the calling area.
 4. If the 3800 Series modem causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. But if advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. Also, you will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC if you believe it is necessary.
 5. The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations, or procedures that could affect the operation of the equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make the necessary modifications in order to maintain uninterrupted service.
 6. If you experience trouble with this equipment, please contact your sales or service representative (as appropriate) for repair or warranty information. If the product needs to be returned to the company service center for repair, contact them directly for return instructions using one of the following methods:
 - **Via the Internet:** Visit the Paradyne World Wide Web site at <http://www.paradyne.com>
 - **Via Telephone:** Call our automated call system to receive current information via fax or to speak with a company representative.
 - Within the U.S.A., call 1-800-870-2221
 - International, call 813-530-2340
- If the trouble is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you remove the equipment from the network until the problem is resolved.
7. The user is not authorized to repair or modify the equipment.

8. This equipment cannot be used on public coin service provided by the telephone company. Connection to Party Line Service is subject to state tariffs. (Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission or corporation commission for information.)
9. The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device to send any message via a telephone fax machine unless such a message clearly contains, in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page, or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent, and an identification of the business, or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of such business, or other entity, or individual.

In order to program this information, follow the steps outlined in the manual supplied with your fax software.

10. An FCC compliant telephone cord with modular plugs may be provided with this equipment. This equipment is designed to be connected to the telephone network or premises wiring using a compatible modular jack which is Part 68 compliant.

Canada

Notice to Users of the Canadian Public Switched Telephone Network

The Canadian Department of Communications label identifies certified equipment. This certification means that the equipment meets certain telecommunications network protective, operational and safety requirements. The Department does not guarantee the equipment will operate to the user's satisfaction.

Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telecommunications company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. In some cases, the company's inside wiring associated with a single line individual service may be extended by means of a certified connector assembly (telephone extension cord). The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent degradation of service in some situations.

Repairs to certified equipment should be made by an authorized Canadian maintenance facility designated by the supplier. Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions, may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment.

Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone line and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected together. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.

CAUTION

Users should not attempt to make such connections themselves, but should contact the appropriate electric inspection authority, or electrician, as appropriate.

The Load Number for this equipment is listed on the label on the modem. The Load Number (LN) assigned to each terminal device denotes the percentage of the total load to be connected to a telephone loop which is used by the device to prevent overloading. The termination on a loop may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the total of the Load Numbers of all devices does not exceed 100.

If your equipment is in need of repair, refer to the procedures described on page A in the front of this document for contact information.

Table of Contents

Preface

Objectives and Reader Assumptions	vii
How to Use This Manual	vii
Related Documents	vii

1. Introduction

Overview	1-1
Features	1-2
Options	1-2
COMSPHERE 3800 Series Models	1-2

2. Model 3810 and 3820 Installation

Overview	2-1
3800 Series Modem Package	2-2
Model 3810 or Model 3820 Modem Installation	2-3
DTE Connection	2-4
Dial Network Connection	2-6
Model 3810 Dial-Line Connection	2-6
Model 3820 Dial-Line Connection	2-6
Model 3810 4-Wire/2-Wire Leased-Line Connection	2-7
Model 3820 2-Wire Leased-Line Connection	2-7
Model 3810 and Model 3820 Telephone Connection	2-7
Dial Network Management System Connection	2-7
AC Power Transformer Connection	2-7
Modem Power-Up	2-8
Removing and Replacing Model 3810 and Model 3820 Modems	2-8

3. Model 3811 Installation

Overview	3-1
Model 3811 Installation	3-2
Removing and Replacing Model 3811 Modems	3-4

4. DCP Operation

Overview	4-1
Diagnostic Control Panels	4-1
Status Indicators	4-4
Diagnostic Control Panel Operation	4-6
Menu Structure	4-7
Selecting Factory Configuration Options	4-13
Diagnostic Control Panel Security Access	4-15

5. Call Setup Branch

Overview	5-1
Call Setup Branch	5-2

6. Talk/Data Branch

Overview	6-1
Talk/Data Branch	6-1

7. Status Branch

Overview	7-1
Status Branch	7-2

8. Test Branch

Overview	8-1
Test Branch	8-2

9. Configure Branch

Overview	9-1
Configure Branch	9-4
Configuration Tables	9-7
Security Configuration Options	9-46

10. Control Branch

Overview	10-1
Control Branch	10-1
Automatic Firmware Download	10-6

11. Remote Branch

Overview	11-1
Remote Branch	11-2

12. Security

Overview	12-1
Security Branch	12-4
Security Password Entry Techniques	12-11
Database Table Examples	12-12

13. Fax Operation

Overview	13-1
Fax Operation	13-1

14. AT Command Set and S-Registers

Overview	14-1
Operating Modes	14-1
Command Guidelines	14-2
AT Command List	14-2
S-Register List	14-15

Appendices

A. Menu Tree	A-1
B. Result Codes	B-1
C. Troubleshooting	C-1
D. Technical Specifications	D-1
E. Pin Assignments	E-1
F. CCITT V.25bis Dialing Commands and Response	F-1
G. Default Configuration Options	G-1
H. Equipment List	H-1

Glossary

Index

List of Figures

Figure		Page
2-1	Model 3810 and 3820	2-2
2-2	Model 3810 Rear Panel	2-4
2-3	Model 3820 Rear Panel	2-5
3-1	Model 3811	3-2
3-2	Installing a Model 3811 Modem	3-3
3-3	Circuit Pack Lock	3-4
4-1	Model 3810 DCP	4-2
4-2	Model 3820 DCP	4-2
4-3	Optional SDCP, Model 3811 Faceplate, and Optional SDU	4-3
4-4	3800 Series LCD and Keypad	4-6
5-1	Dial Backup	5-4
8-1	Local Analog Loopback	8-3
8-2	Remote Digital Loopback	8-4
8-3	Local Digital Loopback	8-5
8-4	Pattern Test and Local Analog Loopback Test	8-6
8-5	Pattern Test and Remote Digital Loopback Test	8-6
8-6	End-to-End Pattern Test	8-7
9-1	DCP Configuration Process	9-2
9-2	AT Command Configuration Process	9-3
11-1	Top-Level Menu of a Remote 3800 Series Modem	11-3
E-1	Wiring Diagram – 8-Position to 6-Position Crossover Cable	E-4

List of Tables

Tables	Page
4-1 Model 3810 and Model 3811 DCP LEDs	4-4
4-2 Model 3820 DCP LEDs	4-5
4-3 SDCP LEDs	4-5
4-4 Top-Level Menu Status	4-8
4-5 Common Operational Messages	4-11
4-6 Dial Access Security Messages	4-12
5-1 Valid Dial Command Modifiers	5-6
9-1 DTE Interface Configuration Options	9-8
9-2 DTE Dialer Configuration Options	9-15
9-3 Line Dialer Configuration Options	9-20
9-4 Dial Line Configuration Options	9-26
9-5 Leased Line Configuration Options	9-29
9-6 V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options	9-34
9-7 Test Configuration Options	9-40
9-8 Miscellaneous Configuration Options	9-42
9-9 Security Configuration Options	9-46
12-1 Edit Password Table Group Options	12-7
12-2 Set Answer Security Group Options	12-8
12-3 Set Originate Security Group Options	12-9
12-4 Security Database Table Using VF-Side Passwords	12-12
12-5 Security Database Table Using DTE-Side Passwords	12-13
12-6 Security Database Table Using Both VF-Side and DTE-Side Passwords	12-13
12-7 Security Database Table Using Paired VF-Side and DTE-Side Passwords	12-14
14-1 3800 Series AT Commands	14-3
14-2 3800 Series S-Registers	14-16
B-1 Result Codes	B-1
C-1 Modem Health	C-1
C-2 Modem – DTE Connection	C-2
C-3 Modem – VF Connection	C-2
C-4 Online Operation	C-4
C-5 Leased-Line Operation	C-4
C-6 Dial Backup Operation	C-4
D-1 Technical Specifications for 3800 Series Modems	D-1
E-1 EIA-232-D Pin Assignments	E-2
E-2 EIA RS-366-A Pin Assignments	E-3
E-3 VF Connector Pin Assignments: Models 3810 and 3820	E-5
E-4 VF Connector Pin Assignments: TELCO Jacks	E-5
F-1 V.25bis Commands	F-4
F-2 V.25bis Response Messages	F-5
G-1 Factory Default Configuration Options	G-1

Preface

Objectives and Reader Assumptions

This manual describes how to install and operate the COMSPHERE® 3800 Series standalone and carrier-mounted modems. It is assumed that you have a basic understanding of modems and their operation.

How to Use This Manual

Chapter 1 provides information about the 3800 Series modems' features.

Chapter 2 and Chapter 3 provide instructions for installing the 3800 Series modems.

Chapter 4 provides the information required to operate the Model 3810 and Model 3820 using the diagnostic control panel (DCP) and the Model 3811 using the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier's shared diagnostic control panel (SDCP).

Chapters 5 through 12 describe the eight branches of the front panel command sets: Call Setup, Talk/Data, Status, Test, Configure, Control, Remote, and Security.

Chapter 13 provides an overview of fax modem operation.

Chapter 14 provides instructions for displaying and changing AT commands and S-registers.

Appendix A provides a menu tree for 3800 Series modems.

Appendix B provides a list of the result codes produced by 3800 Series modems.

Appendix C provides instructions for performing diagnostic tests when data communications problems occur.

Appendix D provides technical specifications.

Appendix E provides EIA RS-232, EIA RS-366A, and VF TELCO pin assignments.

Appendix F provides V.25bis dialing information.

Appendix G provides a list of all default configuration options available for the four factory preset configurations: Async Dial, Sync Dial, Sync Leased, and UNIX Dial.

Appendix H provides an equipment list for 3800 Series modems.

The Glossary provides a description of terms used throughout this manual.

A reference card is inserted inside the back cover.

Related Documents

3000-A2-GA31	<i>COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual</i>
6700-A2-GY31	<i>COMSPHERE 6700 Series Network Management System User's Guide</i>
3610-A2-GZ45	<i>3600 Hubbing Device Feature Number 3600-F3-300 Installation Instructions</i>

Call your sales representative to order additional product documentation.

Introduction 1

Overview	1-1
Features	1-2
Options	1-2
COMSPHERE 3800 Series Models	1-2

Overview

The COMSPHERE 3800 Series modems, a new generation of full-feature, high-speed dial modems, offer reliable asynchronous and synchronous operation over dial- or leased-lines networks. The 3800 Series modems' unique software defineability allows for the addition of future enhancements, whether it is installing new features or firmware upgrades.

Through its downloading capability, any 3800 Series modem can be upgraded to the latest firmware, requiring no new hardware investment or on-site personnel, and little or no downtime. These modems support a wide range of modulation schemes and offer control using either AT commands, the user-friendly diagnostic control panel (DCP) or the optional COMSPHERE 6700 Series Network Management System (NMS). The NMS performs extensive monitoring, testing, reporting, and restoral functions to assist in managing your network.

High-speed data transfer and reliable throughput at data rates as high as 19,200 bps (*V.32terbo*) over dial lines is guaranteed by employing the latest techniques in CCITT V.42bis/MNP Class 5 data compression and CCITT V.42/MNP error correction. In addition to fast line speeds, the modem can send data to the DTE at speeds as high as 115,200 bps.

The 3800 Series modem is extremely versatile when used in modem pooling environments; it allows multiple users to temporarily customize settings in the 3800 Series modem, thereby permitting communication with the calling modem. Upon disconnection, the 3800 Series modem falls back to its original configuration settings and resumes normal operation.

The modem's compatibility with a number of dialing methods and protocols, such as asynchronous AT commands, CCITT V.25bis dialing, EIA RS-366-A dialing for carrier-mounted modems, and the user-friendly diagnostic control panel (DCP), permits the 3800 Series modem to be used in a variety of applications and environments while also allowing control over modem configuration, dialing, and diagnostics. The 3800 Series modems offer four preset factory configurations containing the most often used modem settings. These factory presets provide quick configuration for any asynchronous/ synchronous dial, synchronous leased, or UNIX® hardware-based dial environments.

The 3800 Series family is available in three models: the Model 3810, a 4-wire/2-wire standalone modem; the Model 3811, a carrier-mounted version of the standalone unit; and the Model 3820, a 2-wire standalone unit. All three models offer a variety of modulation schemes and network enhancements while still providing reliable, high-speed data transmission using the latest in modem technology.

Features

The 3800 Series modems have a wide variety of features.

- Dial-Line Modulations: V.32*terbo* (19,200 and 16,800 bps), CCITT V.32bis (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, and 4800 bps), V.32 (9600 and 4800 bps), V.22bis (2400 bps), V.22 (1200 bps), V.21 (300 bps), Bell 212A, (1200 bps), and Bell 103J (300 bps).
- Two-wire/four-wire Leased-Line Modulations: V.32*terbo* (19,200 and 16,800 bps), V.32bis (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, and 4800 bps), V.32 (9600 and 4800 bps), V.22bis (2400 bps).
- Convenient migration to new or optional features through software downloading.
- CCITT V.42bis and MNP Class 5 data compression.
- Virtual error free data integrity with CCITT V.42 and MNP Level 4 error control.
- Automatic and manual single call dial backup and dial standby capabilities for 4-wire leased-line applications (Model 3810 and Model 3811).
- A unique Paradyne modem pooling feature that preserves the answering modem's permanent configuration, but allows multiple users to temporarily adapt parameters for individual requirements.
- Dial-line data rates from 300 bps–19,200 bps. Leased-line rates from 2400 bps–19,200 bps.
- Asynchronous dial DTE data rates from 300 bps–115,200 bps.
- A diagnostic control panel (DCP) on the front bezel that displays the connect status, data rate, type of error control or compression, test results, alarm status of DTE or VF parameters for both local and remote modems.
- Storage of up to 10 telephone numbers to directory locations.
- Compatibility with the industry de facto standard AT Command set.
- Dialing via DCP, AT commands, CCITT V.25bis commands, or RS-366-A (Model 3811 only).
- Configuration of software options via the AT Command set or DCP.
- High-speed transmission using asynchronous, synchronous, or UNIX devices over full- or half-duplex dial networks or 2-wire/4-wire leased lines.
- Complement of self-tests, local and remote loopbacks including CCITT compatible V.54.
- Four factory-defined configurations and two user-defined configuration areas.
- Availability in either the 2-wire/4-wire standalone and carrier mount, or the 2-wire only standalone models.
- Originate Security and three Answer Security modes.
- Directory #1 Callback capability.
- Dial Access Security which guards against unwanted user access to the host DTE.
- Hayes Autosync support.

Options

The 3800 Series modems also may have the following optional features:

- Diagnostic, control, monitor, and call statistic capabilities through the COMSPHERE 6700 Series NMS.
- Class 2 Fax modulations: CCITT V.17 (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200 bps), V.29 (9600, 7200 bps) and V.27*ter* (4800, 2400 bps).

COMSPHERE 3800 Series Models

The COMSPHERE 3800 Series modem is available in several models.

- Model 3810, a 4-wire/2-wire standalone unit capable of operation on 2-wire dial, or 4-wire leased or 2-wire leased lines.
- Model 3811, a 4-wire/2-wire carrier-mounted modem for installation into a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier; it is capable of operation on dial, or 4-wire leased or 2-wire leased lines.
- Model 3820, a 2-wire standalone unit capable of operation on dial or 2-wire leased lines.

Model 3810 and 3820 Installation 2

Overview	2-1
3800 Series Modem Package	2-2
Customer-Supplied Equipment	2-3
Model 3810 or Model 3820 Modem Installation	2-3
Connecting Model 3810 and Model 3820 Modems with Supplied Cables	2-4
DTE Connection	2-4
Dial Network Connection	2-6
Model 3810 Dial-Line Connection	2-6
Model 3820 Dial-Line Connection	2-6
Model 3810 4-Wire/2-Wire Leased-Line Connection	2-7
Model 3820 2-Wire Leased-Line Connection	2-7
Model 3810 and Model 3820 Telephone Connection	2-7
Dial Network Management System Connection	2-7
AC Power Transformer Connection	2-7
Modem Power-Up	2-8
Removing and Replacing Model 3810 and Model 3820 Modems	2-8

Overview

The standalone Model 3810 modem (Figure 2-1) is capable of either dial or 4-wire/2-wire leased-line operation. The modem is controlled using either AT commands or the diagnostic control panel (DCP). The DCP consists of an LCD which displays the Top-Level menu, three function keys and four directional keys which allow you to maneuver and choose DCP selections, and a row of 12 LED status indicators which display modem activity. For a better understanding of DCP operation, refer to Chapter 4, *DCP Operation*.

The rear of the modem contains an ON/Off power switch, a low voltage ac power connector, an 8-pin modular connector for phone or leased-line connection, an

8-pin modular connector for dial-line connection, a 4-pin modular connector for network management, and a DB-25-S DTE connector.

The standalone Model 3820 is capable of dial and 2-wire leased-line operation. Its DCP functions are similar to the Model 3810 except it has only six LED status indicators. For more information regarding the DCP, refer to Chapter 4, *DCP Operation*.

The rear of the modem contains an ON/Off power switch, a low voltage ac power connector, an 8-pin modular connector for external telephone use, an 8-pin modular connector for dial-line or 2-wire leased-line connection, a 4-pin modular connector for network management, and a DB-25-S DTE connector.

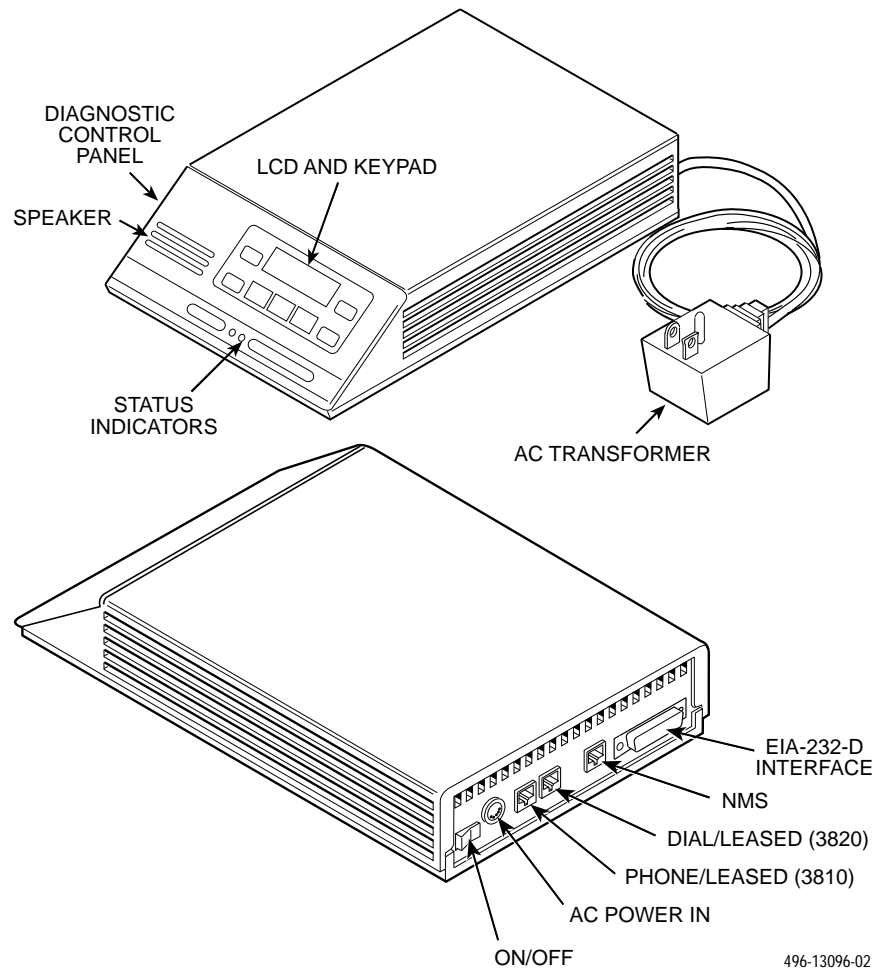


Figure 2-1. Model 3810 and 3820

3800 Series Modem Package

After opening the modem's package, check for damage and verify that the following items are present:

- Manual and reference card
- Model 3810 or Model 3820 modem
- Power transformer
- One 6-position, 4-wire modular cord (Model 3810 and Model 3820)
- One 8-position, 8-wire modular cord (Model 3810 only)
- One ferrite choke and cable tie
- Fax software and documentation (if fax option installed)

If any hardware components are damaged, notify your sales or service representative. Refer to page A in the front of this document for contact information.

Customer-Supplied Equipment

The following customer-supplied equipment is required to complete a data communications system using either the Model 3810 or Model 3820 modem:

- A DTE with an available EIA-232-D serial port.
- A standard EIA-232-D male-to-female cable with a male DB-25-S connector at one end to attach to the modem.
- One of the following modular dial or leased network interfaces:
 - RJ45S for dial programmable applications
 - RJ11C for dial permissive applications
 - An 8-position to 6-position crossover cable for JM8 leased-line applications only

The following customer-supplied equipment is required for the installation of a Model 3811 modem:

- A COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier.
- A male-to-female 50-pin mass termination cable. One Network Interface Module (NIM) for modems installed in Slots 1–8 and one NIM for modems installed in Slots 9–16 (required for dial-line applications).
- One of the following modular or 50-pin dial or leased network interfaces:
 - RJ11C for single line dial permissive applications
 - RJ45S for single line dial programmable applications
 - RJ21X for multiple line dial permissive applications
 - RJ27X for multiple line programmable applications
 - 66 punchdown block or other demarcation device
- One 6-position to 6-position modular cord (required for network management applications).
- A Shared Diagnostic Unit (SDU) (required for network management applications).

If the modem is to be managed by a network management system, a Shared Diagnostic Unit (SDU) must be supplied and properly connected to the network management controller. For proper network management connection to the SDU, refer to the *COMSPHERE 6700 Series Network Management System User's Guide*.

For installation of the 3000 Series Carrier into a cabinet, refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier Installation Manual*.

Model 3810 or Model 3820 Modem Installation

Before installing your standalone modem, make sure your installation site is clean and well-ventilated. Allow space around the modem for installing cables and telephone cords, and make sure the modem is located within reach of the ac power outlet. The distance between your modem and DTE should be minimized if DTE data rates exceed 19,200 bps. Also, low capacitance cables may be necessary for speeds greater than 19,200 bps or distances greater than 50 feet.

The rear panel of both the Model 3810 and Model 3820 modems have the following switches and connectors (see Figures 2-2 and 2-3 which appear later in this chapter):

- An ON/Off power switch.
- A 5-pin DIN type power receptacle for ac power transformer.
- An 8-pin modular keyed jack for 4-wire/2-wire leased lines or external telephone set on the Model 3810. On the Model 3820, this jack is for external telephone set use only.
- An 8-pin modular keyed jack for dial (Public Switched Telephone Network, or PSTN) lines on the Model 3810. On the Model 3820, this jack is for dial or 2-wire leased lines.
- A 4-pin modular jack for Network Management System (NMS) connection for future release.
- A 25-pin DB-25-S receptacle for DTE interface.

Connecting Model 3810 and Model 3820 Modems with Supplied Cables

Figure 2-2 and Figure 2-3 show how Model 3810 and Model 3820 modems are connected to certain TELCO jack types using the supplied cables. For other TELCO connections, refer to Appendix E.

DTE Connection

Use the following procedures to connect the EIA-232-D cable and ferrite choke from the modem to the DTE:

1. Make sure the modem's rear panel power switch is Off.
2. Connect the DB-25-P (male) connector on the cable to the DB-25-S (female) connector labeled DTE (Figures 2-2 and 2-3) on the modem's rear panel. Use a small screwdriver to tighten the cable to the modem.
3. Connect the DB-25-P connector on the cable to the DB-25-S connector on the DTE. Use a small screwdriver to tighten the cable to the DTE.

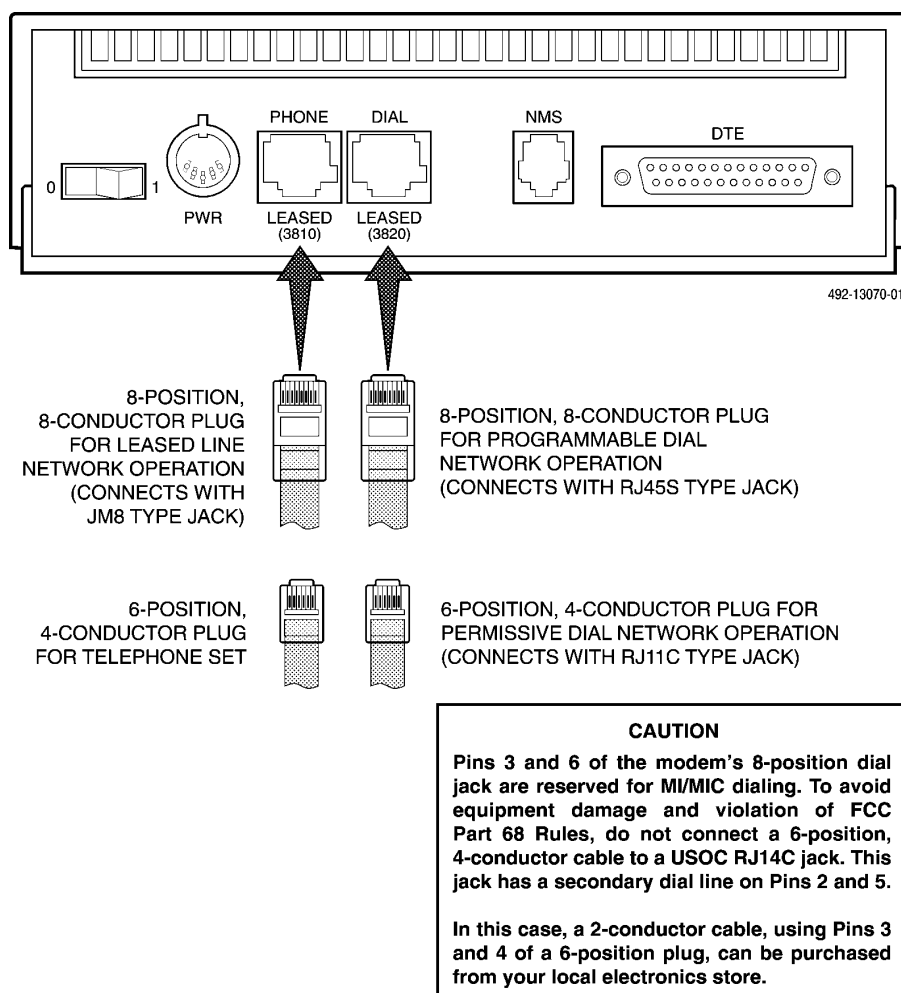


Figure 2-2. Model 3810 Rear Panel

To ensure compliance with FCC Part 15 Regulations, a ferrite choke must be installed on the EIA-232-D interface cable.

1. Open the ferrite choke and place it around the DTE cable as close as possible to the connector attached to the modem.
2. Close the two halves around the cable and snap the ferrite choke shut, pressing down on the plastic latch to secure it.
3. Install a cable tie behind the ferrite choke to prevent it from sliding along the cable.

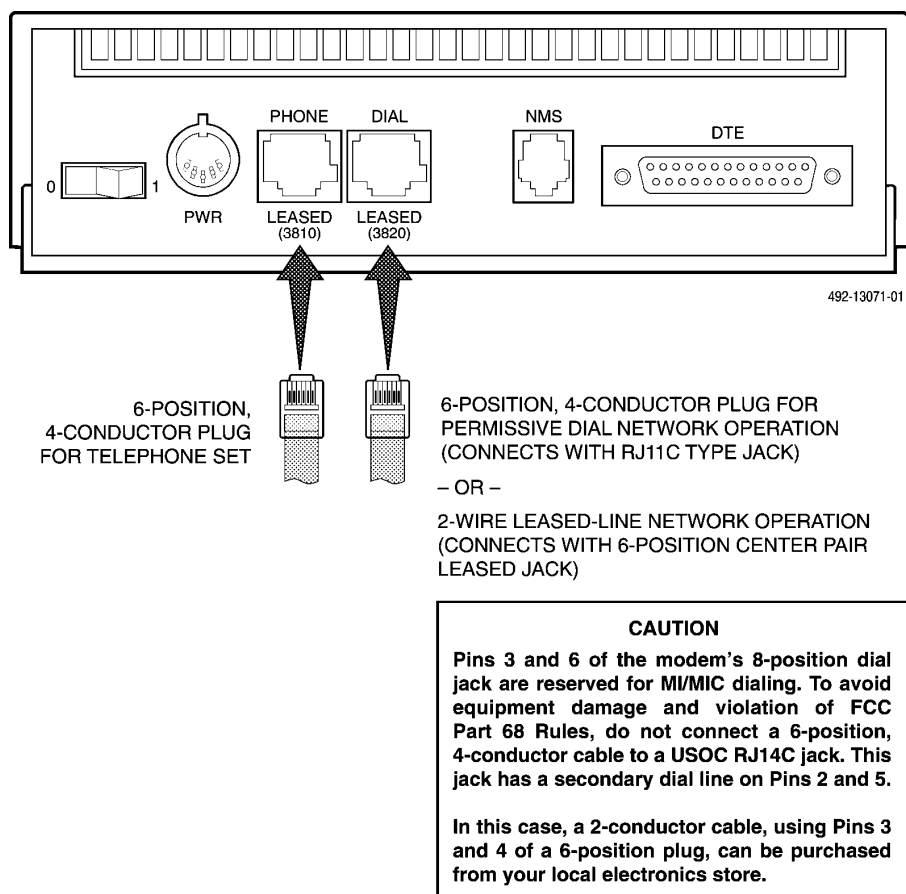


Figure 2-3. Model 3820 Rear Panel

Dial Network Connection

The telephone company provides the line termination jacks for the type of service you request. You may choose to operate in either Permissive or Programmable mode. Advance coordination with the telephone company is suggested when connecting the modem to telephone dial lines (PSTN).

If you operate in the Permissive mode, the modem's transmit output level is fixed at approximately -9 dBm. The telephone company assumes that the line loss is 3 dBm and no compensation is provided for additional losses. The resulting level at the telephone central office could be lower than the nominal -12 dBm provided with Programmable mode. A Permissive mode telephone line is usually terminated with a USOC RJ11C jack.

If you operate in the Programmable mode, the telephone company installs a program resistor that adjusts the modem's output level so that the signal entering the telephone company's central office is at the maximum allowable level of -12 dBm. Telephone lines for the Programmable mode are usually terminated with a USOC RJ45S jack or an RJ41S jack switched to Programmable.

NOTE

The modem is shipped with the Async Dial factory preset configuration stored in memory. This factory preset configures the modem for Permissive mode. To operate in Programmable mode, you must change the Dial Transmit Level configuration option using either the DCP (refer to the Dial Line configuration options in Chapter 9, *Configure Branch*) or the AT&J command (refer to Chapter 14, *AT Command Set and S-Registers*).

Model 3810 Dial-Line Connection

For the Model 3810, use the following procedures to connect the modem to the dial network interface:

Programmable mode

1. Insert the 8-position, 8-conductor modular plug into the jack labeled DIAL/LEASED (3820), Figure 2-2.
2. Insert the other end of the modular cord into the dial network interface.

Permissive mode

1. Insert the 6-position, 4-conductor modular plug into the jack labeled DIAL/LEASED (3820), Figure 2-2.
2. Insert the other end of the modular cord into the dial network interface.

Model 3820 Dial-Line Connection

Use the following procedures to connect a Model 3820 to the dial network interface:

Permissive mode

1. Insert the 6-position, 4-conductor modular plug into the jack labeled DIAL/LEASED (3820), Figure 2-3.
2. Insert the other end of the modular cord into the dial network interface.

Model 3810 4-Wire/2-Wire Leased-Line Connection

Use the following procedures to connect a Model 3810 to the leased-line network interface:

1. Insert the 8-position, 8-conductor modular plug into the jack labeled PHONE/LEASED (3810), Figure 2-2.
2. Insert the other end of the modular cord into the leased-line network interface.
3. If the Model 3810 has a dial backup line, follow the steps listed in *Model 3810 Dial-Line Connection* section.

Model 3820 2-Wire Leased-Line Connection

Use the following procedures to connect a Model 3820 modem to the 6-pin, center pair, leased-line network interface. For 2-wire leased line connection to a JM8 network interface, refer to Figure E-1 in Appendix E:

1. Insert the 6-position, 4-conductor modular plug into the jack labeled DIAL/LEASED (3820), Figure 2-3.
2. Insert the other end of the modular cord into the leased-line network interface.

Model 3810 and Model 3820 Telephone Connection

Use the following procedures to connect the modem to a telephone:

1. Insert the 6-position, 4-conductor modular plug into the jack labeled PHONE/LEASED (3810).
2. Insert the other end of the modular cord into the telephone.

Dial Network Management System Connection

For Model 3810 and 3820 modems, use the following procedures to connect the modem to the network management system interface:

1. Insert the subminiature 4-conductor modular plug of the 3600 Hubbing Device into the jack labeled NMS (Figure 2-2 or 2-3).
2. Connect the 3600 Hubbing Device to the network management system.

Refer to the *3600 Hubbing Device Feature Number 3600-F3-300 Installation Instructions* (3610-A2-GZ45) for more information. Installation for the Model 3810 and 3820 modems is the same as for the 3610 DSU.

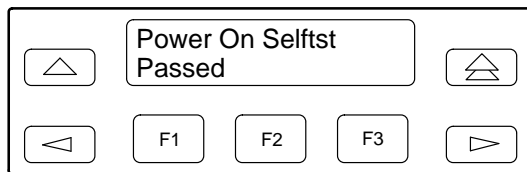
AC Power Transformer Connection

Use the following procedures to connect the modem to an ac power outlet:

1. Make sure the modem's power switch is in the Off position.
2. Insert the power transformer's 5-pin DIN male connector into the modem's rear panel ac power receptacle (Figures 2-2 and 2-3).
3. Insert the power transformer into a grounded ac power outlet.

Modem Power-Up

Once your modem is properly connected to the DTE, dial and/or leased lines, and ac outlet, press the modem's rear panel power switch to the ON position. The modem begins a power-up self-test. This test takes several seconds to perform, and verifies the operation of most hardware components within the modem. If successful, the LCD displays **Power On Selftst Passed** and continues to the Top-Level menu screen.



If a failure occurs during the self-test, the LCD displays **Power On Selftst Failed** for several seconds. The LCD then displays the Top-Level menu screen with the message **Power on Fail** appearing on the top line of the LCD. Although a failure has occurred, the modem will attempt to operate. This allows you to activate a more thorough self-test using the Test branch. Refer to Chapter 8, *Test Branch*.

Removing and Replacing Model 3810 and Model 3820 Modems

To remove and replace a Model 3810 or Model 3820 modem, perform the following steps:

1. Make sure the modem is offline, and press the modem's rear panel power switch to the Off position.
2. Disconnect the power cord from the ac power outlet, and then from the connector on the rear of the modem.
3. Disconnect the dial and leased-line modular cords from the modem's rear panel.
4. Disconnect the DTE interface cable from the modem's rear panel.

If the modem is to be removed for service, return it using the procedures on page A in the front of this document for contact information.

5. Install the replacement modem as described in the *Model 3810 or Model 3820 Modem Installation* section of this chapter, and configure it the same way as the modem being replaced.

Model 3811 Installation 3

Overview	3-1
Model 3811 Installation	3-2
Removing and Replacing Model 3811 Modems	3-4

Overview

The carrier-mounted Model 3811 modem (Figure 3-1) is capable of dial or 4-wire/2-wire leased-line operation and installs into a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. The Model 3811's faceplate has 16 LED status indicators for displaying modem activity and an audio speaker jack for the carrier's optional speaker.

The Model 3811 modem's rear has two DTE edge card connectors that mount into a connector plate located on the rear of the carrier. This connector plate has two DB-25-S connectors, one providing an EIA RS-232 DTE interface and one providing an EIA RS-366A DTE interface. The Model 3811 derives ac power from the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier's backplane which is a common bus to all devices installed in the carrier. The user interface to any Model 3811 is through the shared diagnostic control panel (SDCP), an optional feature

similar to the DCPs on the Model 3810 and Model 3820. For a better understanding of DCP operation, refer to Chapter 4, *DCP Operation*.

The COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier has a total of 17 slots. The first slot, Slot 0, is reserved for the Shared Diagnostic Unit (SDU) while the remaining 16 slots can house up to 16 Model 3811 modems, or for mixed networks, a combination of Model 3811 modems and Model 3611 Data Service Units (DSUs). An SDU is a circuit card that provides SDCP and network management interfaces to modems and DSUs installed in the carrier. SDUs are only required if a single SDCP is used by multiple COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carriers in a cabinet or if a network management system (NMS) is used.

For more details on the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual*.

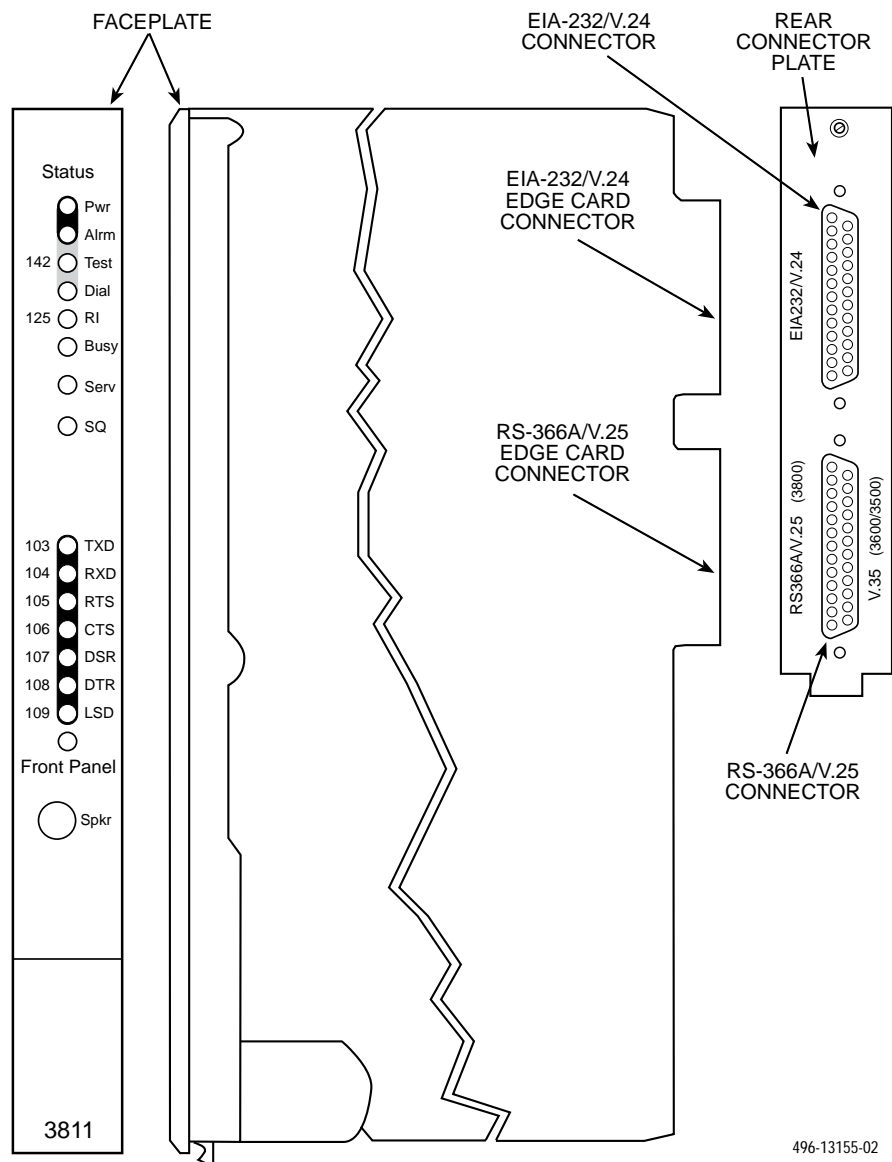


Figure 3-1. Model 3811

Model 3811 Installation

The Model 3811 is designed for installation in a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier which supplies operating power and the dial and/or leased-line network connections. **For correct power, DTE, dial-line, leased-line, NIM, and network management cabling information, refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual*.**

The COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier has 17 slots which can hold up to 16 modems and one Shared Diagnostic Unit (SDU). The SDU is required when the modems in the carrier are controlled by an NMS, or when multiple carriers in a cabinet configuration are to be controlled by a single shared diagnostic control panel (SDCP). The SDCP of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier is the user interface to the Model 3811 modem. A single SDCP can control up to eight carriers containing up to 128 compatible modems.

The installation of a Model 3811 varies slightly if an SDCP is installed on the front of the carrier. To install a Model 3811 modem into the carrier without an SDCP, perform the following steps:

CAUTION

If the Model 3811 is removed from the carrier, always use a ground strap when handling the modem. Always store the Model 3811 in an antistatic bag when it is removed from the carrier.

1. At the rear of the carrier install the rear connector plate. Make sure the plate uses the same slot position as that intended for the modem.

Loosely fasten the plate. This allows for slight adjustments later when installing the modem.

2. At the front of the carrier, hold the modem vertically, with the latch on its faceplate in the open position, and insert it into the top and bottom card guides of one of the slots numbered 1–16 (see Figure 3-2).

Slide the modem into the slot, aligning the modem with the rear connector plate, until the backplane connector and DTE connector seat firmly into the back of the carrier. The faceplate latch automatically closes as you push the modem into the carrier. To lock the modem into the carrier, press the faceplate latch until a click is heard.

3. If the carrier is ON, the **Power** LED on the faceplate of the 3811 lights. After several seconds the modem completes its power-up self-test in which all faceplate LEDs light. If the modem fails, the **Alarm** LED on the faceplate flashes.

Return to the rear of the carrier and tighten the rear connector plate.

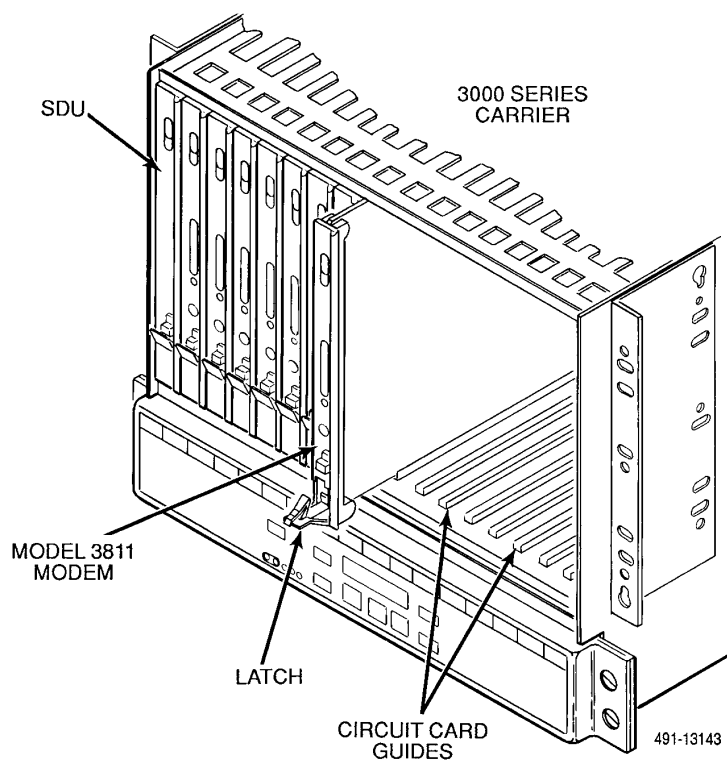


Figure 3-2. Installing a Model 3811 Modem

If the modem is to communicate with an installed SDCP, install the modem as described above and perform the following steps:

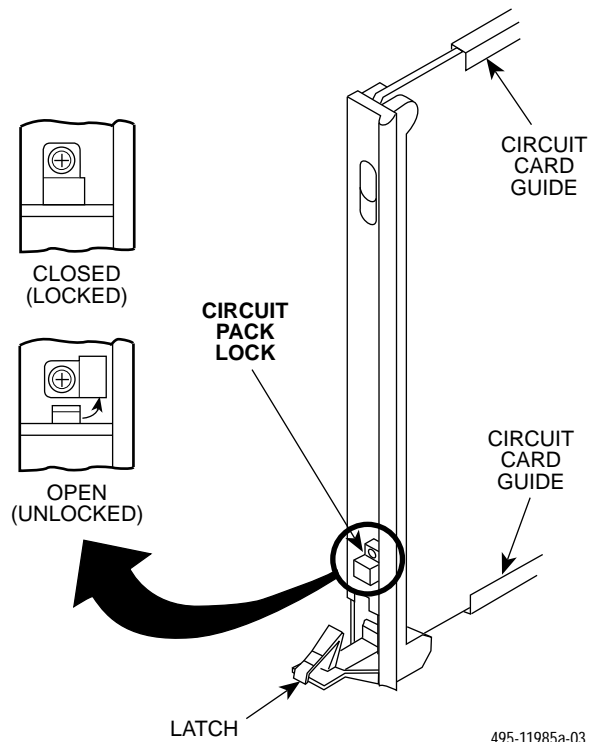
1. Press the **Select** key on the SDCP. The cursor appears in the carrier selection entry.
2. Press the F1 (↑) or F2 (↓) key until the carrier number you want appears on the LCD.

The carrier number selection has a range of 1 to 8 since a single SDCP can control a configuration of up to eight carriers. (This is only possible if the SDU is installed.)
3. Press the **▷** key to position the cursor on the slot selection entry.
4. Press the F1 (↑) or F2 (↓) key until the slot number (1–16) you want appears on the LCD. Ignore the AB designator that appears on the LCD since it is not applicable to the 3800 Series modems.

5. Press the **Select** key to place the SDCP in direct communication with the selected modem.

The LCD displays the Top-Level menu for the selected modem. In addition, the Front Panel LED on the modem's faceplate and the OK LED on the SDCP light.

6. Once you have determined that the modem is installed properly and completed its power-up self-test, rotate the circuit pack lock until it covers the faceplate latch (Figure 3-3). This prevents the modem from accidentally being removed once it is installed in a carrier.
7. Configure the modem as described in the *Selecting Factory Configuration Options* section in Chapter 4.



495-11985a-03

Figure 3-3. Circuit Pack Lock

Removing and Replacing Model 3811 Modems

It is not necessary to power down the carrier to remove and replace a Model 3811 modem. Perform the following steps:

CAUTION

If the Model 3811 is removed from the carrier, always use a ground strap when handling the modem. Always store the Model 3811 in an antistatic bag when it is removed from the carrier.

1. Rotate the circuit pack lock until the release tab is exposed.
2. Press down on the release tab and pull the modem away from the carrier's backplane.

DCP Operation 4

Overview	4-1
Diagnostic Control Panels	4-1
Models 3810 and 3820 Diagnostic Control Panels	4-1
Model 3811 Faceplate and Shared Diagnostic Control Panel	4-3
Status Indicators	4-4
Diagnostic Control Panel Operation	4-6
LCD Display	4-6
Hidden Choice Indicators	4-6
Keypad	4-6
Menu Structure	4-7
Top-Level Menu Status and Operational Messages	4-8
Selecting Factory Configuration Options	4-13
Using the Diagnostic Control Panel	4-13
Using AT Commands	4-13

Overview

This chapter describes how to use the diagnostic control panel (DCP) of the 3800 Series modem. It also describes how to select and use each branch of the Top-Level menu tree.

The LCD displays the result of any command initiated using the DCP. Most of these operations can be performed from an attached asynchronous DTE using the AT command set.

Models 3810 and 3820 Diagnostic Control Panels

The DCPs of the Model 3810 and Model 3820 modems (Figures 4-1 and 4-2) contain status indicators, pushbutton-type keys, and an LCD.

Diagnostic Control Panels

There are two types of DCPs: the front panel on the standalone Model 3810 and Model 3820 modems, and the shared diagnostic control panel (SDCP), an optional feature used with a Model 3811 installed in a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. Both DCPs have a two-line, 32-character liquid crystal display (LCD) and keypad through which Top-Level menu branches are accessed to perform the following:

- Initiate and disconnect dial operations
- Check modem status
- Set up configuration options
- Initiate diagnostic tests
- Access remote modems through the local modem's DCP

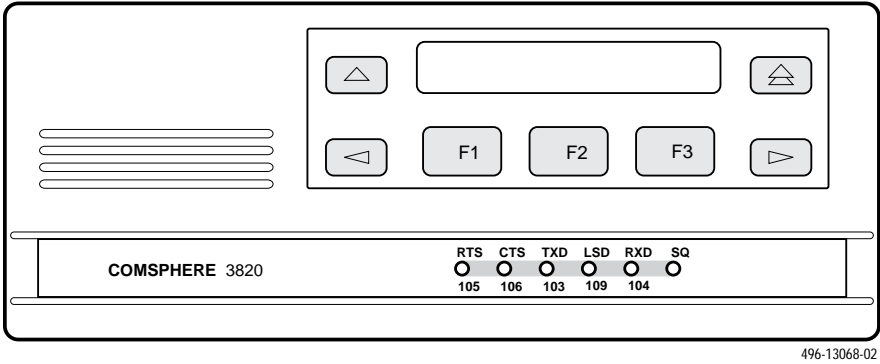


Figure 4-1. Model 3810 DCP

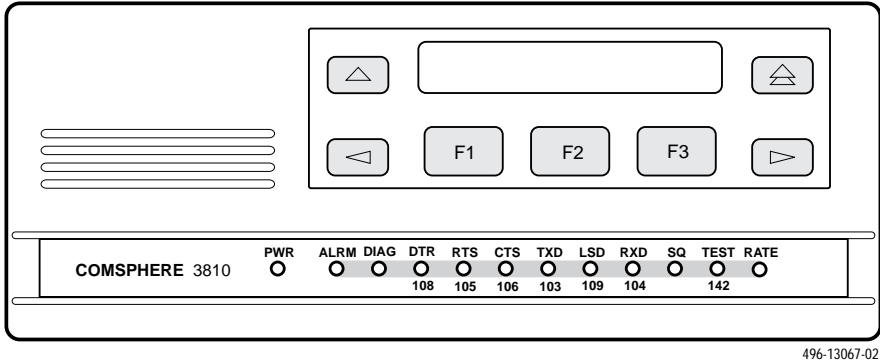


Figure 4-2. Model 3820 DCP

Model 3811 Faceplate and Shared Diagnostic Control Panel

The SDCP is used to manage carrier-mounted Model 3811 modems. Use the SDCP to issue commands to, view and select configuration options on, or monitor tests for a specific Model 3811 modem.

The faceplate of the Model 3811 contains LED status indicators that monitor the operation of the modem. After the SDCP is connected to the modem, the Front Panel indicator of the selected modem lights to show that the modem is connected.

Figure 4-3 shows the SDCP and the Shared Diagnostic Unit (SDU) it interfaces with.

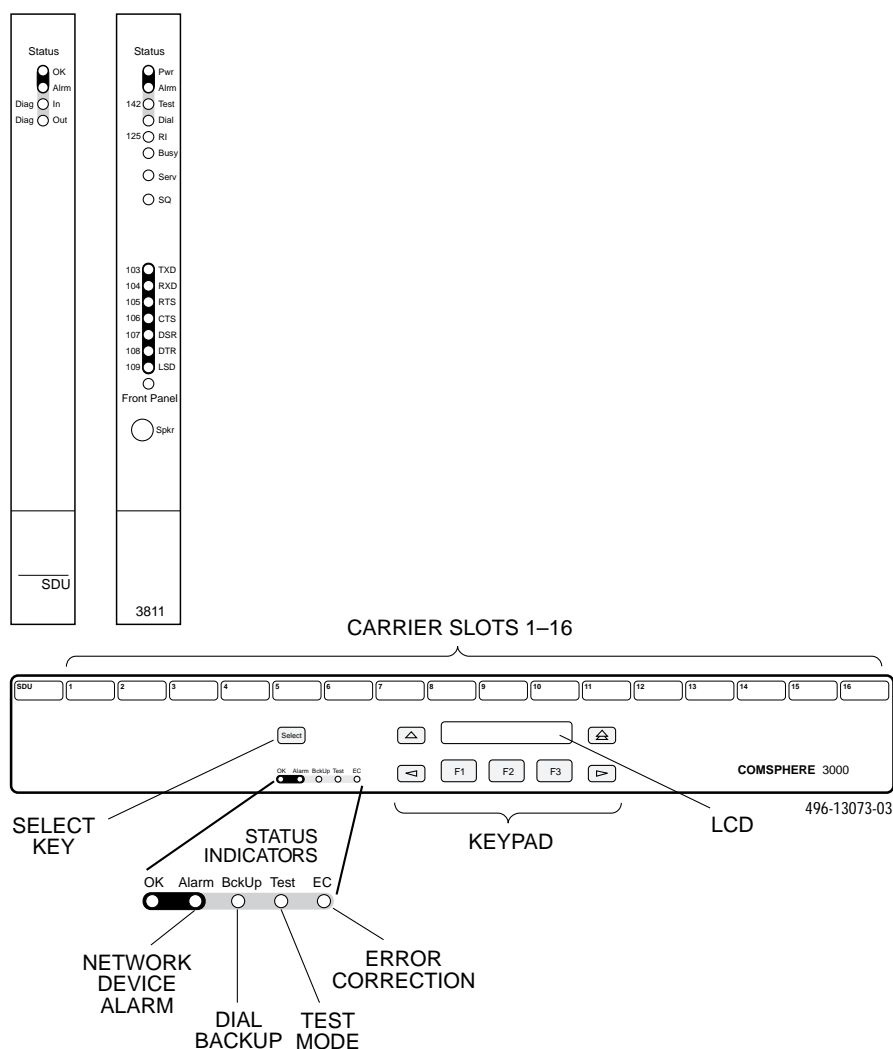


Figure 4-3. Optional SDCP, Model 3811 Faceplate, and Optional SDU

Status Indicators

The 3800 Series modems' status indicators continuously provide information on the modem's operating condition. All of the status indicators on the Model 3810 and Model 3820 appear on the DCP (Figures 4-1 and 4-2), whereas the status indicators for the carrier-mounted Model 3811 are located on the

Model 3811's faceplate, the SDCP, and the SDU faceplate (Figure 4-3).

The standalone Model 3810 modem's DCP has 12 LEDs, and the carrier-mounted Model 3811 has 16 LEDs. These LEDs are listed and described in Table 4-1; LEDs specific to one model type have the appropriate model number shown in the table.

Table 4-1
Model 3810 and Model 3811 DCP LEDs

Label	Color	Indicates
Pwr	green	ON. Power is on and the modem is capable of operating.
Alrm	red	Flashing. A malfunction has been detected in either the modem or COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier.
Diag (3810 only)	green	The modem has responded to a diagnostic command from network management.
DTR/108	green	The DTE has turned ON DTR or the modem has forced DTR ON.
Test/142	yellow	The modem is involved in a test. Normal operation is not possible.
Dial (3811 only)	green	Flashing. The modem is attempting to establish a call over the dial network. ON. The modem has established a dial connection. OFF. A dial connection does not exist.
RI/125 (3811 only)	green	A ringing signal is being received.
Busy (3811 only)	yellow	ON. The modem is placed in a forced busy condition and is off-hook.
Serv (3811 only)	yellow	ON. The modem is connected to the carrier service line rather than the normally assigned dial network.
SQ	yellow	The receive telephone line signal is degraded.
TXD/103	green	The modem is receiving data from the DTE to transmit. (ON equals space.)
RXD/104	green	Data is being transferred to the DTE. (ON equals space.)
RTS/105	green	RTS signal is ON.
CTS/106	green	CTS signal is ON.
LSD/109	green	The modem has detected a valid carrier signal and is capable of transferring data to the DTE.
DSR/107 (3811 only)	green	DSR signal is ON.
Rate (3810 only)	yellow	ON. The modem is connected at a data rate lower than the data rate it is configured for. OFF. The modem is connected at its configured data rate.
Front Panel (3811 only)	yellow	ON. The modem is connected to the carrier's SDCP.

DCP LEDs for the standalone Model 3820 are listed and described in Table 4-2.

The SDCP LEDs are listed and described in Table 4-3.

Table 4-2
Model 3820 DCP LEDs

Label	Color	Indicates
RTS/105	green	RTS signal is ON.
CTS/106	green	CTS signal is ON.
TXD/103	green	The modem is receiving data from the DTE to transmit. (ON equals space.)
LSD/109	green	The modem receiver has detected a valid carrier signal and is capable of transferring data to the DTE.
RXD/104	green	Data is being transferred to the DTE. (ON equals space.)
SQ	yellow	The receive telephone line signal is degraded.

Table 4-3
SDCP LEDs

Label	Color	Indicates
OK	green	Power is ON and the modem is capable of operating.
Alrm	red	The modem has detected a problem with its operation. For example, the modem failed a self-test.
BckUp	yellow	The modem, originally configured for leased-line operation, is now operating on dial networks in a Dial Backup mode.
Test	yellow	The modem is involved in a test. Normal operation is not possible.
EC	green	Modem is in Error Control mode.

Diagnostic Control Panel Operation

The 3800 Series modem's diagnostic control panel (DCP) is the user interface to all functions used to configure and control the modem. This interface includes the status light-emitting diodes (LEDs), and a two-line, 32-character liquid crystal display (LCD) and keypad (Figure 4-4).

Use the DCP to display the following kinds of information:

- Operational status
- Configuration options
- DCP entry displays
- Remote modem access

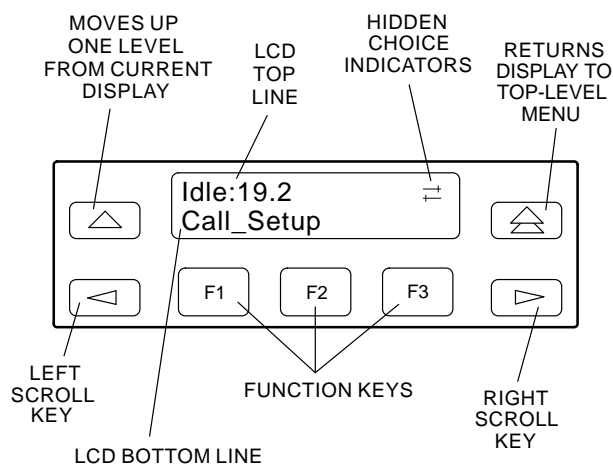


Figure 4-4. 3800 Series LCD and Keypad

LCD Display

The LCD consists of a top line and bottom line, with each displaying a maximum of 16 characters at a time. If additional information appears on the LCD than what is currently displayed, a hidden choice indicator (< ▢ >) appears in the upper right-hand corner of the LCD. Use the < or > key to scroll in the indicated direction to display more selections onto the LCD.

Hidden Choice Indicators

The Hidden Choice Indicators serve as an alert that other selections are available besides what is currently displayed on the LCD. These indicators appear as one of the following symbols:

Right Scroll Indicator >

The right scroll indicator displays when more choices are available to the right of what is currently displayed on the LCD.

Left/Right Scroll Indicator ⇄

The left/right scroll indicator displays when more choices are available to the left and right of what is currently displayed on the LCD.

Left Scroll Indicator <

The left scroll indicator displays when more choices are available to the left of what is currently displayed on the LCD. The LCD does not wrap around to the first choice once you have reached the end of choices.

Remote Mode Indicator ▣

If the local 3800 Series modem establishes a connection with the remote 3800 Series modem via the Remote branch, then ▣ appears in place of the hidden choice indicator on both modems.

Keypad

The DCP on the Model 3810 and Model 3820 has seven keys while the optional SDCP of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier has eight keys. The additional key on the carrier is the **Select** key, used to connect the SDCP to a specific slot in the carrier.

⇄ Key

The ⇄ key returns you to the Top-Level menu display from anywhere in the menu tree.

Pressing ⇄ while changing configuration options displays the message **Save Straps? Yes No**. If **No** is selected, changes made to configuration options are not saved and the Top-Level menu appears. If **Yes** is selected, then changes are saved to either Active (Saved), Customer 1, or Customer 2 configuration areas.

△ Key

The △ key moves you up one level in the menu tree.

◁ and ▷ Keys

Use the ◁ and ▷ keys to move the viewing window left or right and to scroll the remaining branches and selections into view. A maximum of three selections can be displayed at one time.

These keys also allow you to move the cursor one character to the left or right on data entry displays; for example, to allow entry of one digit at a time.

F1, F2, F3 Keys

Function keys select the LCD choice that appears above the function key; they are labeled F1, F2, and F3. If a selection spans more than one function key, then any of those keys choose that selection.

Select Key (Model 3811 only)

The **Select** key appears on the optional SDCP of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. It is used to connect the SDCP to a modem in a specific slot in the carrier.

- Talk/Data** — Used to switch the modem between Talk mode (the modem is disconnected from the VF line) and Data mode (the modem is connected to the VF line) when dialing via either the DCP or the attached telephone. (See Chapter 6.)
- Status** — Used to monitor the current status of the VF line and DTE interface as well as view the identity of the modem. (See Chapter 7.)
- Test** — Used to begin and end various modem tests. (See Chapter 8.)
- Configure** — Used to change and save the modem's configuration options. (See Chapter 9.)
- Control** — Used to control the modem's hardware and software functions. (See Chapter 10.)
- Remote** — Used to access and control a remote 3800 Series modem. (See Chapter 11.)
- Security** — Used to control the modem's dial access security. Appears only if the optional security feature is installed. (See Chapter 12.)

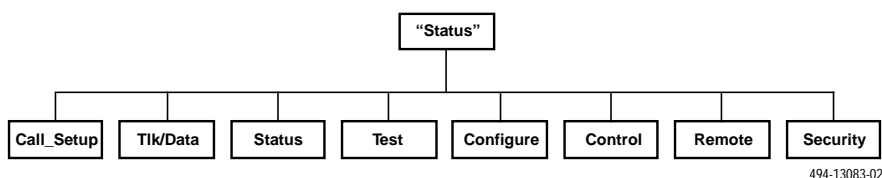
Menu Structure

The menu tree is a hierarchical structure used to display functions that configure and control local and remote 3800 Series modems. It is accessed via the DCP and is shown in Appendix A.

The menu tree contains the following branches:

- Call Setup** — Used to dial, disconnect, and answer telephone calls as well as store up to 10 telephone numbers in directory locations. (See Chapter 5.)

Menu tree branches are described in Chapters 5 through 12. Functions that appear on the LCD vary depending upon the type of model installed, its operating mode, and software configuration.



Top-Level Menu Status and Operational Messages

Access to all menu tree branches from the DCP begins at the Top-Level menu, the head of the menu hierarchy.

The LCD's top line identifies the modem status, as listed in Table 4-4, while the bottom line displays the main menu tree branches and operational and dial access security messages, as listed in Table 4-5 and Table 4-6.

Table 4-4
(1 of 3)
Top-Level Menu Status

Normal Operation Status Message	Indicates
Fax Rx:MR*	Indicates that the modem is online, in fax receive modem, operating at the displayed data rate.
Fax Tx:MR*	Indicates that the modem is online, in fax transmit mode, operating at the displayed data rate.
Idle:MR*	The modem is configured for dial network operation and is on-hook.
Leased:MR*	The modem is operating on leased lines at the displayed data rate.
OnLine:MR* EC**	Indicates the modem is online, in Data mode, and operating at the displayed data rate. EC (error control) displays if error control is operational.
Ring Indicate	The local modem is receiving an incoming ring.
Test:MR*	The modem is in test mode operating at the displayed data rate.
Alarm Status Message***	Indicates
Make Busy	Indicates the modem is in a Make Busy condition.
Power On Fail	Indicates the modem has failed its Power-On Self-Test.
Self Health Fail	Indicates a failure in the modem's hardware components.
Weak Battery	Indicates the battery is operating below 2 volts. Contact your sales or service representative.
Normal Call Setup Messages	Indicates
Off Hook	The modem is off-hook and waiting to dial a telephone number.
Dialing	The remote modem is ringing.
Training	The modem is training or retraining.
EC Negotiating	The local and remote modems are negotiating the highest possible level of error control compatible between both modems. Once a level is selected, this LCD message disappears.
<p>* MR. Modem Rate indicates the data rate the modem is using. One of the following values appears: 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 7200, 9600, 12K (12,000), 14.4 (14,400), 16.8 (16,800), or 19.2 (19,200) bps.</p> <p>** EC. Error Control indicates the modem is online and using V.42 or MNP error control. One of the following values appears after the modem rates listed above: MNP2, MNP3, MNP4, MNP5, V42, V42b, or NoEC. (NoEC indicates the modem is connected in Buffer mode rather than error control. If an EC value does not appear, then the modem is in Direct mode.)</p> <p>*** The Alarm Status Messages only appear when the Normal Operation Status Messages display; the LCD alternates between the two message sets.</p>	

**Table 4-4
(2 of 3)
Top-Level Menu Status**

Call Failure Messages	Indicates
Busy Signal	The answering modem is busy.
Dial Line in Use	The modem is already operating on dial networks when another call attempt has been issued.
Invalid Number	The modem has dialed a telephone number not stored in a directory location.
No Answer Tone	The answering modem has not answered within the time limit specified by the No Answer Timeout configuration option.
No Dial – DTR	The modem cannot dial because DTR is Off.
No Dial – Test	The modem cannot dial because it is running a Test.
No Dial Tone	The modem has aborted the call because it cannot detect a dial tone.
No Quiet Answer	The modem has detected No Quiet Answer (@) before the time-out setting of the No Answer Disconnect configuration option.
Trunk Busy	The modem is receiving a fast (trunk) busy.
Call Disconnect Messages	Indicates
ATH Disconnect	The modem has disconnected due to an ATH command.
Bad Lines Disc	The modem has disconnected because the lines do not support the modulation and/or data rate selected.
No Carrier Disc	The modem disconnects due to the loss of carrier signal from the remote modem.
DTR Disconnect	The modem has disconnected due to the loss of DTR from the DTE.
EC Disconnect	The modem has disconnected due to failure to negotiate Error Control mode.
Inv Rate Disc	When using V.32bis modulation, the remote modem does not support the data rate used by the local modem.
LnCurrnt Disc	The modem has disconnected due to the loss of line current.
LongSpace Disc	The modem has disconnected due to the detection of a long space.
NoData Disc	The modem has disconnected due to a lack of transmitted and received data.
Disconnecting	The modem has begun the disconnect sequence.
Rmt Cmnded Disc	The modem has disconnected due to a V.32 Cleardown received from the remote modem.
Talk Mode	The modem is in Talk mode.

**Table 4-4
(3 of 3)
Top-Level Menu Status**

Dial Backup Messages	Indicates
Dial Standby	The modem is operating in Dial Standby mode.
DialBckUp:MR*	The modem is operating in a Dial Backup mode at the displayed data rate and is configured for Direct mode.
Backup:MR* EC**	The modem is operating in Dial Backup mode and is configured for error control and data compression on leased lines.
Stndby:MR* EC**	The modem is operating in Dial Standby mode and is configured for error control and data compression on leased lines.
Firmware Download Result Messages	Indicates
DownldOnly Mode	Indicates that a local download of firmware or a remote cloning of firmware has failed. The modem is currently in a Download Only mode in which only another download attempt is possible.
Frmware Upgrade	Indicates that a local download of firmware or a remote cloning of firmware was successful.
RemClone Failed	Displays on the local modem's LCD and indicates that a remote cloning of firmware has failed.
Remote Clone OK	Displays on the local modem's LCD and indicates that a remote cloning of firmware was successful.
AT Command Reset Message	Indicates
Reset by AT command	The modem has performed a reset in response to an ATZ command.
<p>* MR. Modem Rate indicates the data rate the modem is using. One of the following values appears: 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 7200, 9600, 12K (12,000), 14.4 (14,400), 16.8 (16,800), or 19.2 (19,200) bps.</p> <p>** EC. Error Control indicates the modem is online and using V.42 or MNP error control. One of the following values appears after the modem rates listed above: MNP2, MNP3, MNP4, MNP5, V42, V42b, or NoEC. (NoEC indicates the modem is connected in Buffer mode rather than error control. If an EC value does not appear, then the modem is in Direct mode.)</p>	

Messages listed in Table 4-5 are common operational messages that occur during modem operation. These messages normally appear on the second line of the LCD.

Table 4-5
Common Operational Messages

Common Operational Messages	Indicates
Please Wait...	Appears when a command to a local device takes more than two seconds to complete.
Command Sent...	Appears when a command is sent to a remote modem.
No Rem Response or Remote Modem Fail	Appears when a remote modem does not respond to a command within 5 seconds.
Command Complete	Appears when a command, issued to a local or remote modem, is completed.
Invalid Command	Appears when the modem cannot complete a command.

Messages listed in Table 4-6 are dial access security messages that can occur when the optional security feature is installed.

The Top-Level menu's main branches appear on the LCD in the order of Call Setup, Talk/Data, Status, Test, Configure, Control, Security, and Remote. These branches are described in the following chapters.

Table 4-6
Dial Access Security Messages

Dial Access Security Messages	Indicates
Get VF PsWd	The answering modem is waiting for the originating caller to transmit a VF password.
Get DTE PsWd	The answering modem is waiting to receive a valid DTE password from the remote DTE.
VF PsWd Timeout	The modem did not finish answering a call (disconnected) because the allowed time limit was exceeded before the modem received a VF password from the originating dialer.
Unknown DTEpswd	The modem did not finish answering a call (disconnected) because the DTE passwords received from the remote DTE were invalid.
No Orig PsWd	The modem did not attempt to establish a call as requested because the AT dial command did not contain an originate access password.
Unknown VF PsWd	The modem did not finish answering a call (disconnected) because the modem received an invalid VF password.
DTEpswd Timeout	The modem did not finish answering a call (disconnected) because the allowed time limit was exceeded before the modem received a DTE password from the remote DTE.
Inval Orig PsWd	The modem did not attempt to establish the call as requested because the originate password in the AT dial command was not valid.
DTR Dial Blocked	Appears if DTR dialing is used and Answer Access or Originate Access security is enabled. DTR dialing is not permitted when security is enabled.
SecurityBlocked	Appears only when the modem is in base mode (a mode that occurs during a firmware download) and Answer Access Security is enabled. In this case, the access verification capabilities are not available and the modem does not pass data to the DTE under any circumstances.

Selecting Factory Configuration Options

After the modem passes the power-up self-test, configure it for operation using one of the factory preset configurations.

The 3800 Series modems have several factory preset templates that contain the most commonly used configuration options (straps) for Asynchronous Dial, Synchronous Dial, Synchronous Leased (Answer or Originate), UNIX hardware network, cellular mobile, and cellular PSTN configurations. Your modem is shipped from the factory with the Async Dial default configuration options stored in memory. If Sync Dial, Sync Leased, UNIX Dial, or Cellular is more appropriate for your configuration, then you must change the factory setting using either the modem's DCP or the AT command set as described in the following sections.

The preset configuration gives you a "head start" in getting your modem operating and reduces the amount of time required to configure your modem. For a better understanding of DCP operation and factory preset configuration options, refer to Chapter 9, *Configure Branch*.

Using the Diagnostic Control Panel (DCP)

The DCP's liquid crystal display (LCD) consists of two 16-character lines which display modem status, control functions, and configuration options as well as indicating your location in the Top-Level menu tree (Appendix A).

To change the factory template using the DCP, perform the following steps:

1. On the DCP press the \triangleright key until **Configure** comes into view.
2. Press the function key below Configure to select the Configure branch.

The LCD now displays **Ld EditArea frm**.

3. Press the \triangleright key until **Factory** comes into view, then press the F1 key to display the factory preset configurations.

Factory preset configurations are **Async Dial**, **Sync Dial**, **Sync Leased**, **UNIX Dial**, **Cellular (Mobile)**, and **Cellular (PSTN)**. If Sync Leased is selected, you must choose either **Answer** or **Originate** mode.

4. Press the \triangleright key until the appropriate factory preset appears on the LCD, and press the corresponding function key to select your choice.
5. **Choose Function** appears and displays the Edit and Save functions.
6. Press the F3 key (Save) to save the new factory preset configuration to one of three configuration areas, **Active (Saved)**, **Customer 1**, or **Customer 2**.

(These three configuration areas are nonvolatile memory locations. Active (Saved) contains the most recently saved changes to any configuration options. In the event of power loss, the modem retrieves these configuration options. Customer 1 and Customer 2 are user-defined configuration areas.)

The LCD now displays **Sav EditArea to**.

7. Press the \triangleright key until the appropriate configuration area appears on the LCD, then press the corresponding function key to select your choice. (Saving configuration options to the Active (Saved) configuration area automatically saves them to the Active (Operating) configuration area.) The LCD displays **Command Complete**.
8. The modem is now configured with the selected factory template. Press the \triangleleft key to return to the Top-Level menu.

Refer to Chapter 9, *Configure Branch*, for more information regarding default factory configuration options.

Using AT Commands

When using AT commands, the following criteria must be met:

- Make sure the asynchronous DTE's communication software is configured for 10-bit character format (for example, 8 data bits, no parity, and 1 stop bit).
- Make sure the DTE (RS-232D) cable is attached to the DTE connector on the rear of the Model 3810 or 3820 modem, or (for the Model 3811 modem) the rear of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, and the correct serial communications port on the asynchronous DTE.

- On initial power-up, the modem is in Command mode. To verify that the modem is connected and functioning properly, enter the following:

TYPE: AT

PRESS: Return (Enter)

The screen displays **OK**.

If the modem does not return **OK**, refer to Appendix C, *Troubleshooting*.

NOTE

If you have already changed the factory preset configuration you may have lost AT command control. To regain AT command control, select, via the DCP, the Async Dial factory preset configuration as described earlier in *Using the Diagnostic Control Panel (DCP)*.

To change a factory template using AT commands, perform the following steps (for more information on changing factory templates using AT commands, refer to Chapter 14, *AT Command Set and S-Registers*).

1. Use the AT&F&W command to load the appropriate factory configuration to the appropriate storage area. Enter the following:

TYPE: AT&Fy&Wn

Where: y is one of the following Factory configurations:

- 0 for Async Dial
- 1 for Sync Dial
- 2 for Sync Leased (Answer)
- 3 for UNIX Dial
- 4 for Sync Leased (Originate)
- 5 for Cellular (Mobile)
- 6 for Cellular (PSTN)

(NOTE: &F1, &F2, and &F4 remove AT command control. The only way to return to AT command control is through the DCP as described earlier in *Using the Diagnostic Control Panel (DCP)*.)

and

Where: n is one of the following storage areas:

- 0 for Active (Saved)
- 1 for Customer 1
- 2 for Customer 2

(NOTE: These three configuration areas are nonvolatile memory locations. Active (Saved) contains the most recently saved changes to any configuration options. In the event of power loss, the modem retrieves these configuration options. Customer 1 and Customer 2 are user-defined configuration areas.)

PRESS: Return (Enter)

2. The selected factory configuration is saved.

The &V (View) command can be used to display the configuration options in effect. The output of the &V command can be saved to a file and printed (using your communications software), providing both a record of your configuration and a worksheet for configuration enhancements. Refer to Chapter 14, *AT Command Set and S-Registers*, for more on AT commands.

Diagnostic Control Panel Security Access


NOTE

This page of the manual is self-supporting and can be removed to prevent unwanted knowledge of the DCP security access selections.

Use the DCP security access function to “lock” the DCP of any 3800 Series modem and prevent unwanted user access. Two options are available for this function: Grant and Deny.

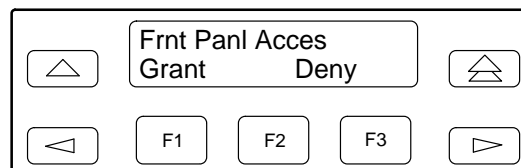
Grant allows any branch of the Top-Level menu to be accessed from the DCP. Deny allows access only to the Status branch of the Top-Level menu. All 3800 Series modems are shipped from the factory with DCP access granted.

To access the Front Panel (DCP) Security Access function, perform the following:

Press the  key three times.

Press the  key twice.

Press the  key once.



Select Grant to allow access or select Deny to lock DCP access.

Either selection results in a return to the Top-Level menu.

Call Setup Branch 5

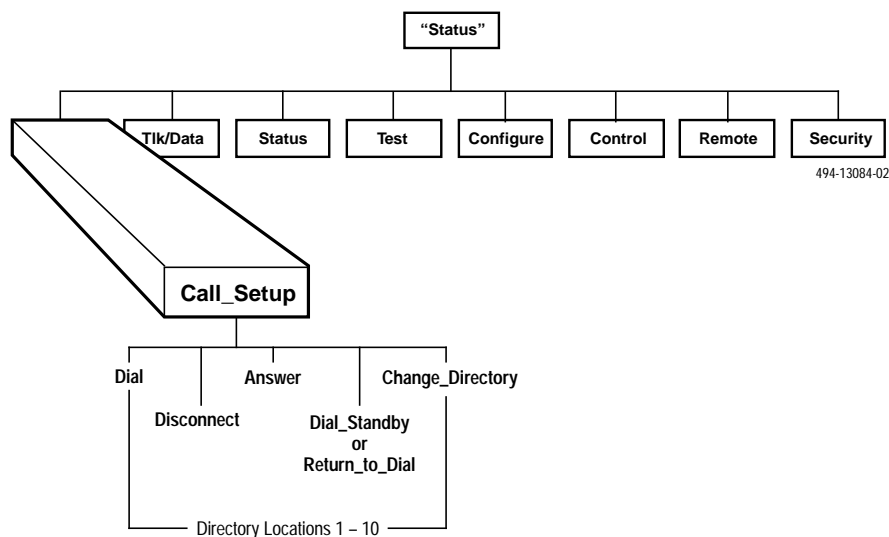
Overview	5-1
Call Setup Branch	5-2
Dial	5-2
Disconnect	5-3
Answer	5-3
Dial Standby/Return to Dial	5-4
Change Directory	5-5
Entering Telephone Numbers and Dial Command Modifiers into Directory Locations	5-5

Overview

The Call Setup branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to dial, disconnect, and answer telephone calls. It also allows you to create and store up to 10 telephone numbers to directory locations. Six different functions can appear under Call Setup: Dial, Disconnect, Answer, Dial Standby or Return to Dial (when applicable), and Change Directory.

NOTE

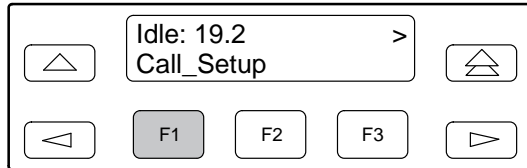
The Dial Standby and Return to Dial functions only appear when the modem is in Dial Backup mode. If the Model 3820 is operating on leased lines, Change Directory is the only function available.



Call Setup Branch

In the following descriptions, the shaded key indicates what key to press to perform the described operation.

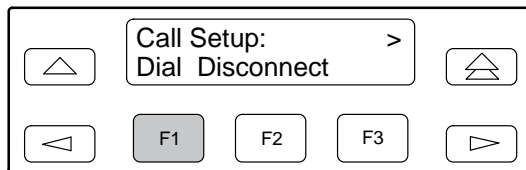
To access the Call Setup branch from the Top-Level menu, select Call_Setup:



Dial

Dial allows you to dial any telephone number stored in directory locations 1–10. Any telephone number dialed using the DCP must already exist in a directory location. Refer to Change Directory for information on storing telephone numbers in directory locations.

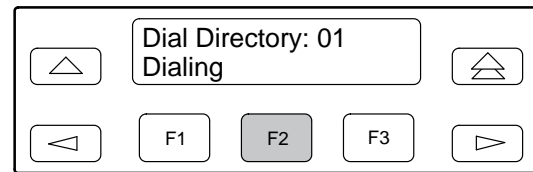
To access Dial from the Call Setup branch, make the following selection:



Select Dial to display the first directory telephone number.



To view other directory locations, select Nxt.



Once the directory location you want appears on the LCD, press the F2 or F3 key to dial the number.

If the connection is successful, the modem is online and one of the Normal Operation status messages appears on the LCD. If the connection is not successful, the LCD displays one of the Call Failure status messages. (See Table 4-4 in Chapter 4.)

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command equivalent for Dial is $DS=n$, where n is directory location 1–10.

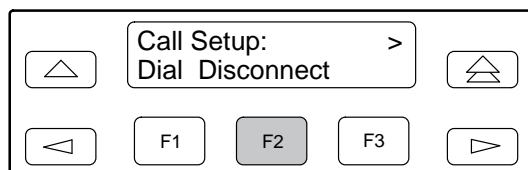
Disconnect

Disconnect allows the modem to go on-hook (hang up). Use this function when you want to disconnect an established call on a dial line.

NOTE

When the Model 3820 is configured for leased-line operation, this function is not available and is not displayed on the LCD.

To access Disconnect from the Call Setup branch, make the following selection:



Select Disconnect.



The modem goes on-hook (hangs up) and the call is disconnected. This includes any calls being used for dial backup of leased lines. The **Command Complete** status message is displayed.

To exit this function and remain in the Call Setup branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangle key.

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command equivalent for Disconnect is H or H0.

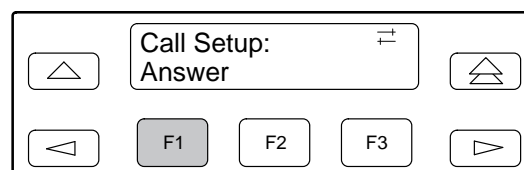
Answer

Answer allows the modem to go off-hook, generate an answer tone, and begin the handshaking process with the calling modem. Use the Answer function when the Auto-Answer Ring Count configuration option is disabled. (See the *Line Dialer* section in Chapter 9.)

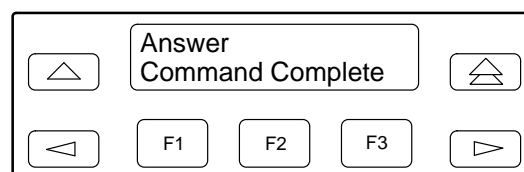
NOTE

When the Model 3820 is configured for leased-line operation, this function is not available and is not displayed on the LCD.

To access Answer from the Call Setup branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Answer is displayed. Select Answer.



The modem goes off-hook and attempts to establish a connection in Answer mode. The **Command Complete** status message appears on the LCD.

To exit this function and remain in the Call Setup branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangle key.

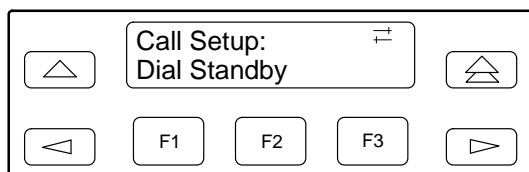
AT Command Equivalent

The AT command equivalent for Answer is A.

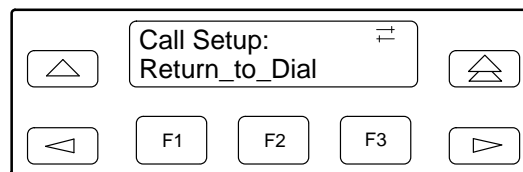
Dial Standby/Return to Dial

The Dial Standby and Return to Dial functions appear on the LCD only after the Model 3810 or Model 3811, operating on leased lines, is placed into dial backup. Once the modem is operating in Dial Backup mode, these functions allow the modem to be switched back and forth between dial and leased-line operation while still maintaining the dial connection. See Figure 5-1. (Switching between dial and leased-line operation can be performed manually or automatically by enabling the Auto Dial Standby configuration option.)

For example, under normal dial backup conditions, when a problem occurs on the leased line, the modems establish a connection over the dial network using a telephone number stored in directory location 1.



When this occurs, the Dial Standby function now appears on the LCD. By selecting this function, the modem switches back to the leased line while still maintaining the dial connection. As a result, the Return to Dial function now appears on the LCD instead of Dial Standby.

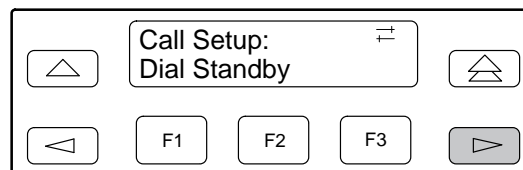


If the leased line is found to be unacceptable, select Return_to_Dial which switches the modem back to dial network operation (LCD displays Dial Standby). If, however, the leased line is operating properly, you can select Disconnect from the Call Setup branch and drop the dial-line call.

NOTE

When the Model 3820 is configured for leased-line operation, this function is not available and is not displayed on the LCD.

To access Dial Standby or Return to Dial from the Call Setup branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Dial Standby or Return to Dial is displayed. Select the appropriate function.

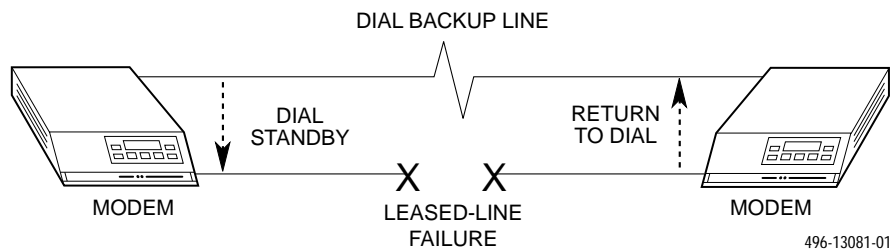
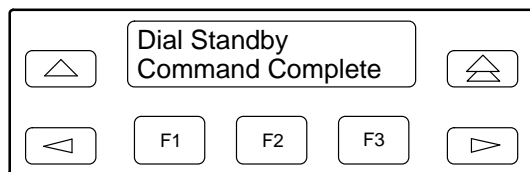


Figure 5-1. Dial Backup



If the modem is operating in a Dial Backup mode, the Dial Standby function forces the modem to leased lines and displays the status message **Command Complete**.

Once the modem is in Dial Standby mode, the Return to Dial function appears on the LCD. Selecting this function forces the modem to dial networks and displays the status message **Command Complete**.

AT Command Equivalent

There is no AT Command equivalent for Dial Standby or Return to Dial.

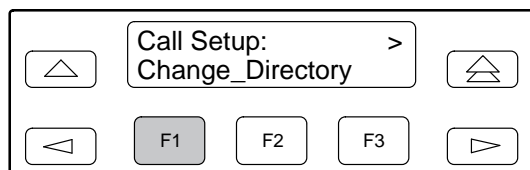
Change Directory

Change Directory allows you to enter or modify telephone numbers. The modem has nonvolatile memory locations that allow you to store up to 10 telephone numbers. Each directory location can accept up to 40 characters; this includes the telephone number and dial command modifiers. Any telephone number dialed using the DCP Dial command must appear in a directory location.

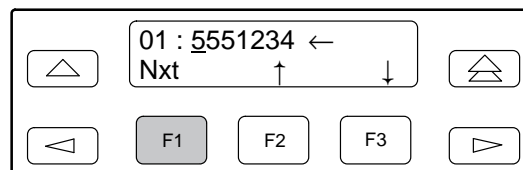
NOTE

If the modem is operating on leased lines and has a dial line attached for dial backup purposes, it is required that directory location 1 contain the telephone number used for dial backup.

To access Change Directory from the Call Setup branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Change_Directory is displayed. Press any function key to select Change_Directory.

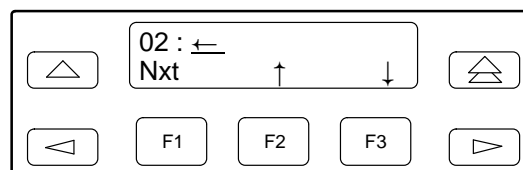


The phone number listed in directory location 1 is displayed. Select Nxt to display other directory locations.

Entering Telephone Numbers and Dial Command Modifiers into Directory Locations

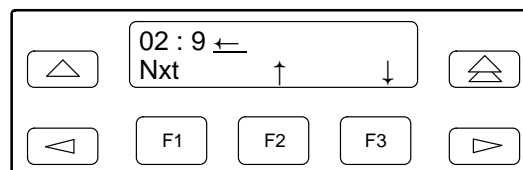
The following example uses an empty directory location for describing how to enter a telephone number. If you want to change an existing telephone number in any of the ten directory locations, follow the same procedures.

To add a telephone number to a directory location, make the following selections:



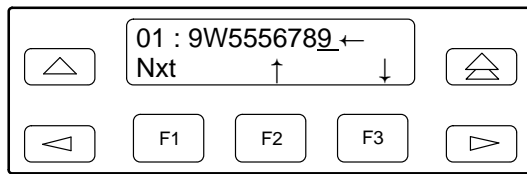
Select Nxt until a blank directory appears on the LCD. (The cursor (\leftarrow) always appears in the first character position.)

Select F2 (\uparrow) or F3 (\downarrow) until the desired character is selected. This can be an alpha or numeric character.



Press the \triangleright key to move the cursor to the next character position.

Continue this key sequence until the dial command modifiers and telephone number are entered. (Refer to Table 5-1 for a list of valid dial command modifiers.)



To save the number just entered, scroll to the next directory location by selecting Nxt or press the ↑ or ↓ key. The number is now stored in nonvolatile memory.

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command for Change Directory is &Zn=x, where *n* is the directory location and *x* is the telephone number.

Table 5-1 describes what can be entered in directory locations.

Table 5-1
Valid Dial Command Modifiers

Dial Command modifiers are parameters entered in the dial command string which specify how, when, and what number to dial. The following is a list of parameters the 3800 Series Modems recognize:

T – Tone (DTMF) dial. Any digit 0–9, *, #, A, B, C, or D can be dialed as tone.

P – Pulse dial. Only the digits 0–9 can be dialed in Pulse Dial mode.

Once a dialing method (tone or pulse) has been specified, it will only remain active until the end of that dial string. The modem defaults to the value set by the Dialer Type configuration option.

, – Pause. Causes the modem to pause before processing the next character in the dial string. The length of this pause is determined by the setting of the Pause Time configuration option (see Line Dialer configuration option group) or by value held in S-register S8.

W or + – Wait for dial tone. Modem waits for a second dial tone before processing the dial string. This can be the initial dial tone or can be used when dialing through a tandem PBX. For example, 9W 555-6789.

R – Reverse Dial mode. Causes the originating modem to send out an answertone once it no longer detects ringback. (Ringback is the ring you hear at the originating site when making a call.) The R parameter must be the last character in the dial string.

@ – Quiet answer. Wait for five seconds of silence after dialing the number. If the silence is not detected, the modem sends the NO ANSWER result code to the DTE or displays the No Quiet Answer LCD status message.

! – Hook flash. This causes the modem to go on-hook for 0.5 seconds then return to off-hook.

;- Return to Command mode. Modem returns to Command mode after dialing a number without disconnecting the call. This permits you to enter long international telephone numbers, or additional information such as a calling card number, that would exceed the 40-character limit.

Space, –, and (). These characters are ignored by the dial string and can be included to enhance readability.

← End of Number. Hides all characters appearing on the LCD entered to the right of this indicator.

Talk/Data Branch 6

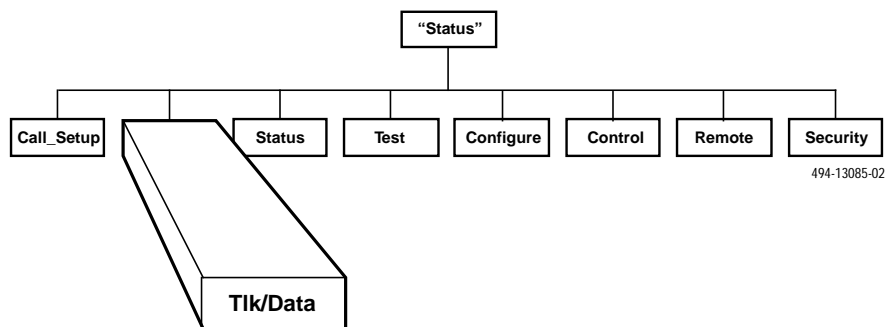
Overview	6-1
Talk/Data Branch	6-1
Manual Dialing when the Remote Modem Is Configured for Auto-Answer	6-2
Manual Dialing when the Remote Modem Is Configured for Manual Answer	6-2
Placing Modems into Talk Mode Once Modems Are Online	6-2

Overview

The Talk/Data branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to switch the modem between Talk mode and Data mode when manually dialing using either the DCP or attached telephone. On initial power-up, the modem is in Talk mode. When in Talk mode, the modem is disconnected and you are free to use the telephone. When in Data mode, the modem is connected and data can be transmitted or received. **This function is only available for Model 3810 and Model 3820 modems.**

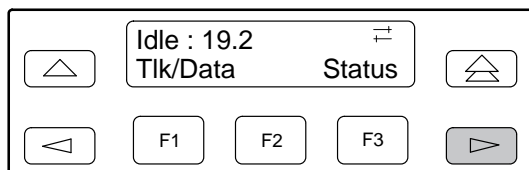
Talk/Data Branch

The following sections describe three uses of the Talk/Data function.



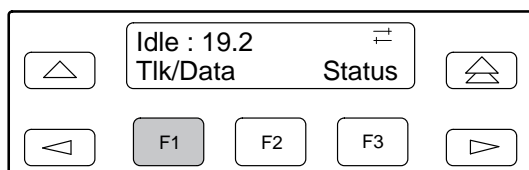
Manual Dialing when the Remote Modem Is Configured for Auto-Answer

If you are originating a call using a telephone and the remote modem is configured for Auto-Answer, perform the following procedure.

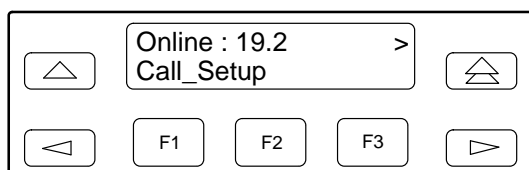


Press the \triangleright key until Tlk/Data is displayed.

Lift the attached handset and dial the telephone number of the remote modem. When the remote modem answers, it transmits an answer tone.



When you hear this tone, immediately select Tlk/Data. This starts the handshaking sequence between your modem and the remote modem.



If this is successful, the modems are in Data mode and Online appears on the LCD.

Manual Dialing when the Remote Modem Is Configured for Manual Answer

If you are originating a call using a telephone and the remote modem is configured for Manual Answer, perform the following procedure.

Once the remote telephone is answered by the remote user, you must both decide when to place the modems into Data mode. You must both select Tlk/Data at approximately the same time to begin the handshaking sequence.

If the handshake is successful, the modems are in Data mode and **OnLine** appears on the LCD.

NOTE

If the remote modem is not a 3800 Series modem, then the remote user must consult that modem's operator's manual to perform a similar operation.

Once the modems are online, status messages listed in Table 4-4 in Chapter 4 appear on the Top-Level display.

It is not necessary to specify an originating or answering modem when dialing via the DCP because the answering modem remembers that it received a ring voltage and will automatically default to Answer mode.

Placing Modems into Talk Mode Once Modems Are Online

If you want to communicate to a remote user via the telephone once a dial connection has been established, perform the following procedure.

Via your asynchronous DTE, inform the remote user that you wish to talk and will be placing the modems into Talk mode. Both users should perform the following.

1. Lift the handset.
2. Press the \triangleright key until Tlk/Data is displayed.
3. Select Tlk/Data.

The telephones are now connected and you are able to talk to the remote user. When you finish your conversation, and return to Data mode, both of you must select Tlk/Data.

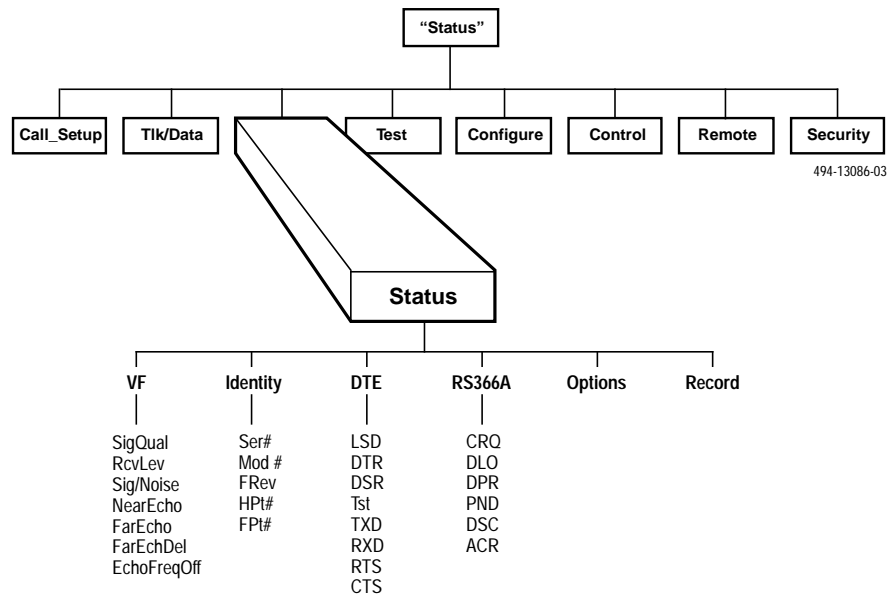
4. Place the handset on to the cradle.

Status Branch 7

Overview	7-1
Status Branch	7-2
VF	7-2
Identity	7-3
DTE	7-4
RS366A	7-4
Options	7-5
Record	7-5

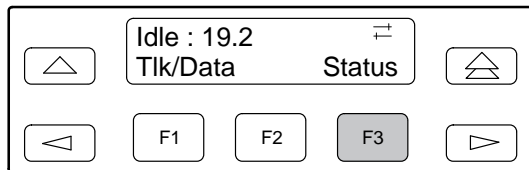
Overview

The Status branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to view the current status of the dial or leased-line connection, the DTE interface, and the identity (for example, serial number and model number) of your equipment. There are up to six selections under Status: VF, Identity, DTE, RS366A, Options, and Record.



Status Branch

To access Status from the Top-Level menu, make the following selections:

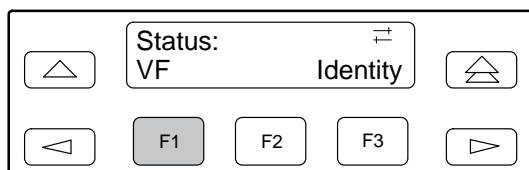


Press the \triangleright key until Status appears. Select Status.

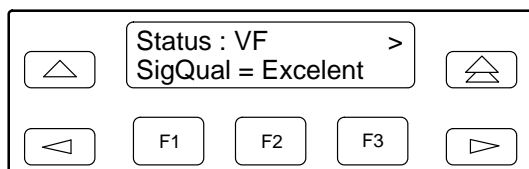
VF

VF displays the condition of the dial or leased-line connection.

To access VF from the Status branch, make the following selection:



Select VF.



The modem's signal quality is displayed on the LCD's bottom line. Press the \triangleright key to scroll and view the receive signal level, signal-to-noise ratio, near end echo, far end echo delay, and echo frequency offset.

SigQual

Signal Quality indicates the condition of the VF line. Possible values are *Excelent* (Excellent), *Good*, *Fair*, *Poor*, or *No Signal*. These values only appear for V.32bis and V.32 modulations.

RevLev

Receive Signal Level indicates, in decibels referenced to one milliwatt (dBm), the actual strength of the incoming signal.

Sig/Noise

Signal-to-Noise Ratio indicates, in decibels, the receive signal strength relative to noise on the line.

NearEcho

Near End Echo displays the signal level, in decibels referenced to one milliwatt (dBm), of that portion of the transmit signal which has been echoed back by the local line termination. This value only appears for V.32bis and V.32 modulations.

FarEcho

Far End Echo displays the signal level, in decibels referenced to one milliwatt (dBm), of that portion of the transmit signal which has been echoed back by the remote line termination. This value only appears for V.32bis and V.32 modulations.

FarEchDel

Far End Echo Delay indicates the roundtrip delay in milliseconds of the far end echo.

EchoFreqOff

Echo Frequency Offset indicates the frequency offset of the far end echo.

To exit VF and remain in the Status Branch, press the \triangleleft key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangleup key.

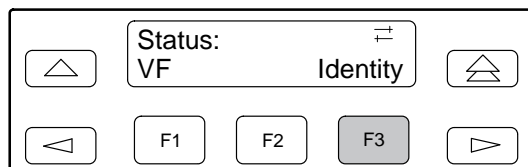
AT Command Equivalent

There is no AT command equivalent for VF status.

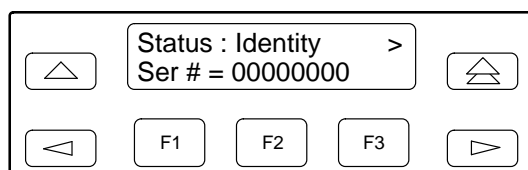
Identity

Identity displays the modem's serial number, model number, firmware revision level, hardware part number and firmware part number. Retrieval of this information is useful if you are purchasing additional or replacement modems and/or making firmware upgrades.

To access Identity from the Status branch, make the following selection:



Select Identity.



The modem's serial number is displayed on the LCD's bottom line. Press the \triangleright key to scroll and view the model number, firmware revision level, hardware part number, and firmware part number.

Ser #	Serial number is an 8-digit number that identifies the modem.
Mod #	Model number is an alphanumeric number that identifies the modem as either a Model 3810, Model 3811, or Model 3820 modem.
FRev	Firmware revision level is an alphanumeric number that identifies the level of firmware loaded in the modem.
HPt #	Hardware part number is an 11-digit number that identifies the circuit card in the modem.
FPt #	Firmware part number is an 11-digit number that identifies to service personnel the firmware release number.

To exit this function and remain in the Status branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangleleft key.

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command I0 displays the product code, normally 144.

The AT command I1 displays a firmware revision number.

The AT command I2 performs an EPROM check and displays **OK** or **Error**.

The AT command I3 displays the modem's serial number.

The AT command I4 displays the modem's model number.

The AT command I5 displays the part number of the circuit card.

The AT command I6 displays the firmware release number.

The AT command I9 displays the firmware revision number (same as I1).

The AT command I10 alters the value of the product code displayed with the I0 command. See Chapter 14 for more information.

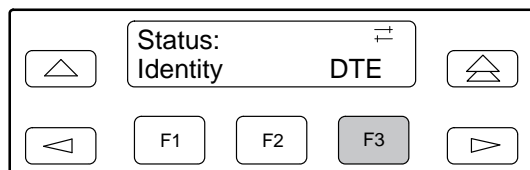
The AT command I11 performs a checksum of the modem's firmware and displays the results in hexadecimal. (There is no DCP equivalent of this command.)

The AT command I19 displays the firmware revision level.

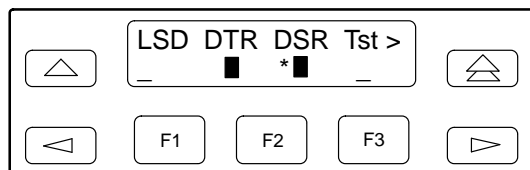
DTE

DTE displays the state and/or activity of the EIA-232-D interface leads: LSD, DTR, DSR, Tst, TXD, RXD, RTS, and CTS signals are monitored. The interface leads status is updated every 5 seconds.

To access DTE from the Status branch, make the following selections:



Press the key until DTE appears. Select DTE.



The activity and state of the modem's DTE signal appear on the LCD's bottom line. Press the \triangleright key to scroll other signals into view.

The LCD's bottom line displays a pair of symbols for each interface lead. The first symbol indicates the signal's activity during the sampling interval. (An * (asterisk) indicates at least one transition while a blank space indicates no transitions since the last update.)

The second symbol indicates the state of the interface lead at the sampling time. (A \blacksquare block) indicates a Space or ON condition while an underscore ($_$) indicates a Mark or Off condition.)

To exit this function and remain in the Status branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangleleft key.

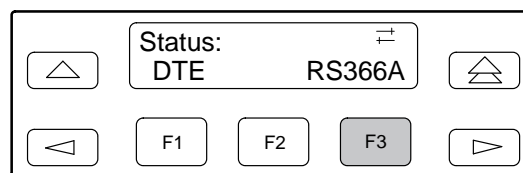
AT Command Equivalent

There is no AT command for DTE status.

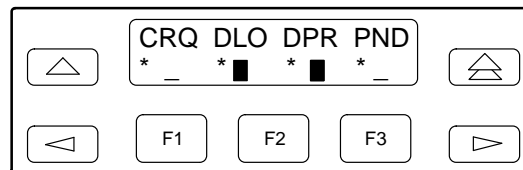
RS366A

RS366A displays the state and/or activity of the RS366A interface leads: CRQ, DLO, DPR, PND, DSC, and ACR. Typically, RS366A call originate is used in synchronous dial out applications where V.25bis dialing is not supported. This function applies to Model 3811 modems only. The interface leads status is updated every 5 seconds.

To access RS366A from the Status branch, make the following selections:



Press the key until RS366A appears. Select RS366A.



The activity and state of the modem's DTE signal appear on the LCD's bottom line. Press the \triangleright key to scroll other signals into view.

The LCD's bottom line displays a pair of symbols for each interface lead. The first symbol indicates the signal's activity during the sampling interval. (An * (asterisk) indicates at least one transition while a blank space indicates no transitions since the last update.)

The second symbol indicates the state of the interface lead at the sampling time. (A \blacksquare block) indicates a Space or ON condition while an underscore ($_$) indicates a Mark or Off condition.)

To exit this function and remain in the Status branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangleleft key.

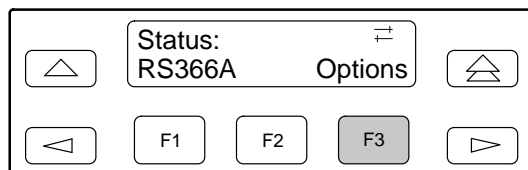
AT Command Equivalent

There is no AT command for RS366A status.

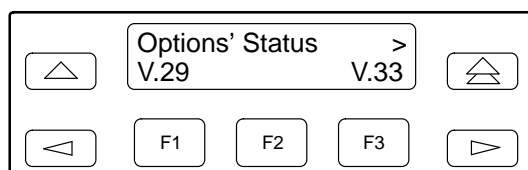
Options

The Options Status function displays all optional firmware features currently installed in the modem (for example, V.29, V.33, and dial network management). If no firmware options are installed, **None_Installed** appears on the LCD.

To access Options from the Status branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Options appears. Select Options.



If optional features are installed in the modem, they appear on the LCD's bottom line. If other features are installed, press the \triangleright key to scroll other features into view.

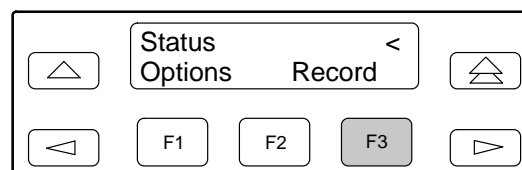
Record

Record is a troubleshooting tool used by the end user in conjunction with support personnel. This function allows the end user to retrieve and report any sequence faults to support personnel. A sequence fault is an irregular or unexpected event.

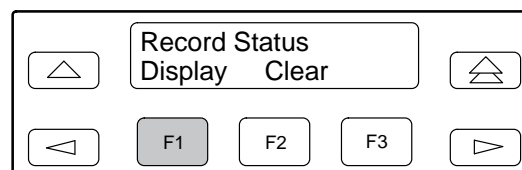
There are two selections under Record: Display and Clear. Display allows up to eight sequence fault messages that have been recorded by the modem to be displayed on the LCD. If no sequence faults have occurred, then **Modem O.K.** appears.

Clear is used to remove all sequence fault messages from nonvolatile memory and the LCD.

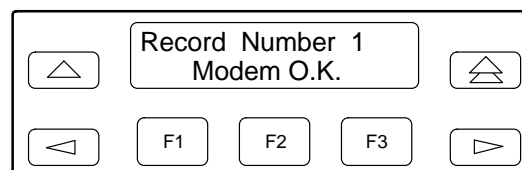
To access Record from the Status branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Record appears. Select Record.



To display sequence faults, select Display.



The LCD displays the first sequence fault field. (Sequence fault fields range from 1 to 8 and are identified by a number in the upper right corner.) Press the \triangleright key to view the remaining fields. The message **Modem O.K.** appears if no sequence faults have occurred.

To remove sequence fault records from both the LCD and nonvolatile memory, select Clear. The message **Modem O.K.** appears.

To exit this function and remain in the Status branch, press the \triangleleft key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangleup key.

AT Command Equivalent

There is no AT command for Record.

Test Branch 8

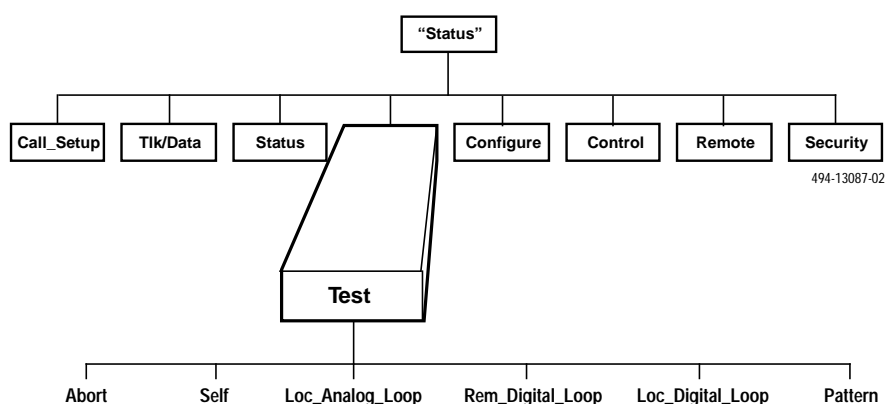
Overview	8-1
Test Branch	8-2
Abort	8-2
Self	8-2
Loc Analog Loop	8-3
Rem Digital Loop	8-4
Loc Digital Loop	8-5
Pattern	8-6

Overview

The Test branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to initiate various modem tests. Use these tests if you are having data communication problems, such as periodic character loss, random errors, or constant format errors. By the process of elimination, you can usually isolate the fault in your system.

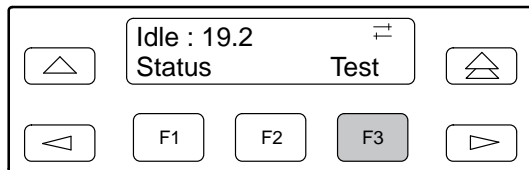
There are six selections under Test: Abort, Self (Self-Test), Loc Analog Loop (Local Analog Loopback), Rem Digital Loop (Remote Digital Loopback), Loc Digital Loop (Local Digital Loopback), and Pattern. The only tests that can operate concurrently are Pattern with a Local Analog Loopback and Pattern with a Remote Digital Loopback. If any test is operating, besides the two combinations just mentioned, it must be canceled before starting another test.

The Test branch only initiates and cancels tests. If any parameters need to be set, refer to the *Tests* section discussed in Chapter 9, *Configure Branch*.



Test Branch

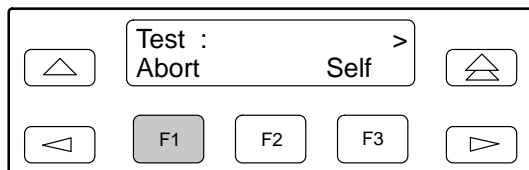
To access the Test branch from the Top-Level menu, make the following selections:



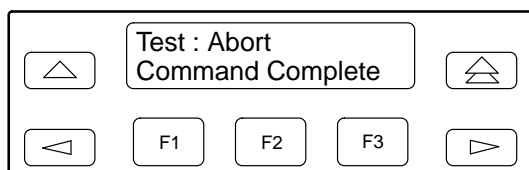
Press the \triangleright key until Test appears. Select Test.

Abort

Abort ends any test that is in progress and brings the modem back to the normal mode of operation. Confirmation is provided by the **Command Complete** message.



Select Abort.



The modem stops all tests currently in progress and displays the **Command Complete** status message on the LCD. To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangle key.

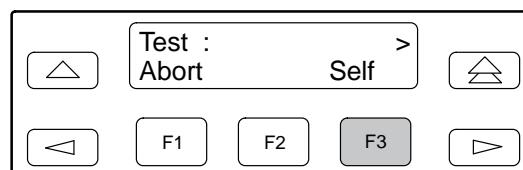
AT Command Equivalent

The AT command is &T0.

Self

Self performs an internal self-test of the modem, which takes less than a minute to complete. The modem must be offline (not connected with another modem), otherwise Invalid Command appears. This test is not valid in Remote mode and does not appear on the LCD of either modem when in Remote mode.

To access Self from the Test branch, make the following selection:



Select Self. (All LCD cells and DCP status indicators light.)

If the modem passes self-test, Pass appears on the LCD. If it fails, **Failed** appears. If the modem fails, contact your service representative.

If **Invalid Command** appears on the LCD, then another test is in progress or the modem is operating on dial lines. Select Abort to clear the current test, or disconnect to clear the dial lines, and then choose Self.

If the modem receives a ring signal during this test, the test is cancelled and the **RI Abort** message appears.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangle key.

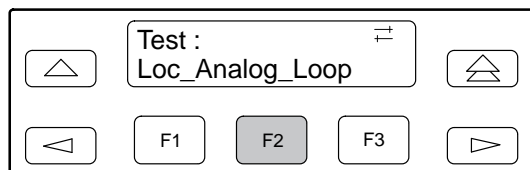
AT Command Equivalent

The AT command is &T9.

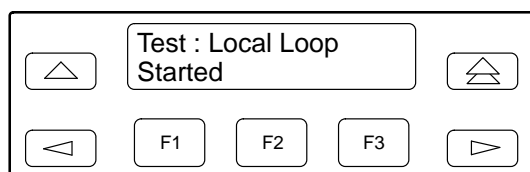
Loc Analog Loop

Loc Analog Loop performs a local analog loopback (CCITT V.54 Loop 3), Figure 8-1, that verifies modem operation as well as the connection between the DTE and modem. The modem must be offline to perform this test, otherwise **Invalid Command** appears.

To access Loc Analog Loop from the Test branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Loc Analog Loop appears. Press any function key to start this test.



The message **Started** appears on the LCD, and the Test LED (Model 3810 and Model 3811) lights for the duration of the test.

If the Test Timeout configuration option is enabled, **Test Timeout** appears at the conclusion of the test. If it is disabled, the test operates until aborted. For more information on the Test Timeout configuration option, refer to the *Tests* section in Chapter 9.

A Ring Indicate during this test can cause errors.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangle key.

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command for Local Analog Loopback is &T1.

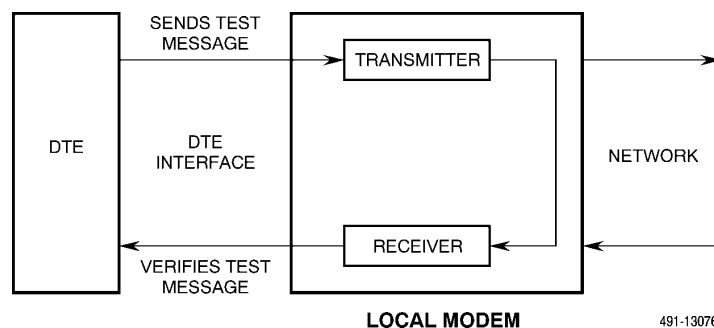
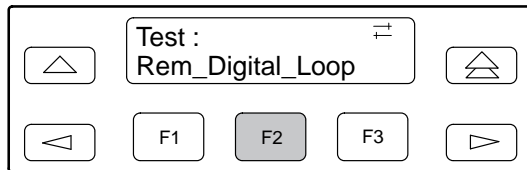


Figure 8-1. Local Analog Loopback

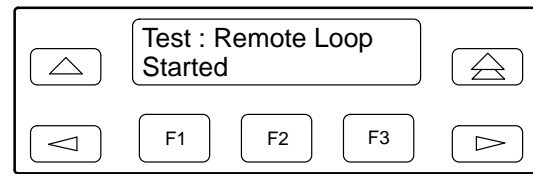
Rem Digital Loop

Rem Digital Loop performs a remote digital loopback (CCITT V.54 Loop 2), Figure 8-2. This test can verify the integrity of the local modem, the communications link, and the remote modem. Any data or pattern entered at the local DTE is sent to and returned from the remote modem. For this test to operate properly, the modems must be online and in Synchronous or Asynchronous Direct mode.

To access Rem Digital Loop from the Test branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Rem_Digital_Loop appears. Press any function key to start this test.



The message **Started** appears on the LCD, and the Test LED (Model 3810 and Model 3811) lights for the duration of the test.

If the Test Timeout configuration option is enabled, **Test Timeout** appears at the conclusion of the test. If it is disabled, the test operates until aborted. For more information on the Test Timeout configuration option, refer to the *Tests* section in Chapter 9.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangle key.

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command for Remote Loopback is &T6.

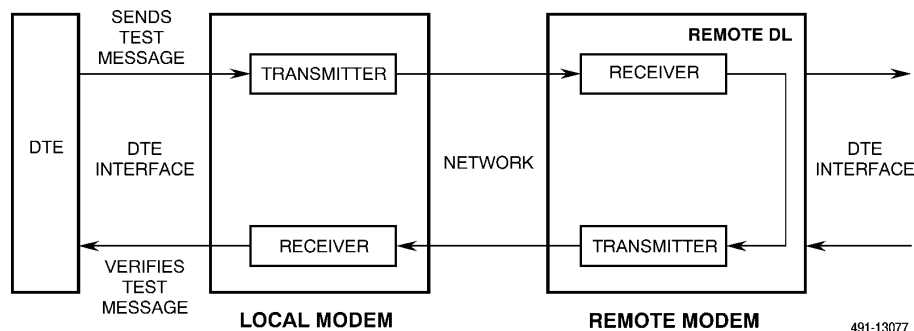
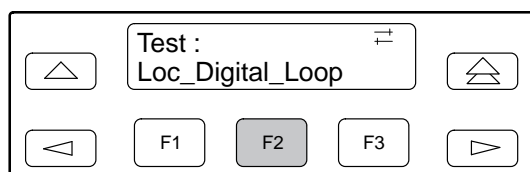


Figure 8-2. Remote Digital Loopback

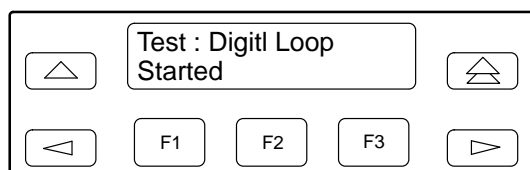
Loc Digital Loop

Loc Digital Loop is issued by a local modem and forces it to loopback any data received from the remote modem (Figure 8-3). (This test operates the same as a CCITT V.54 Loop 2 except it is issued at your modem.) This is useful if a remote modem is incapable of initiating a remote digital loopback from its location. For this test to operate properly, the modems must be online and in Synchronous or Asynchronous Direct mode.

To access Loc Digital Loop from the Test branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until `Loc_Digital_Loop` appears. Press any function key to start this test.



The message **Started** appears on the LCD and the Test LED (Model 3810 and Model 3811) lights.

If the message **Invalid Command** appears on the LCD, then another test is in progress. Select **Abort** to clear the current test and then select **Loc Digital Loop**.

If the Test Timeout configuration option is enabled, Test Timeout appears at the conclusion of the LCD. If it is disabled, the test operates until aborted. For more information on the Test Timeout configuration option, refer to the *Tests* section in Chapter 9.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangleleft key.

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command for Local Digital Loopback is `&T3`.

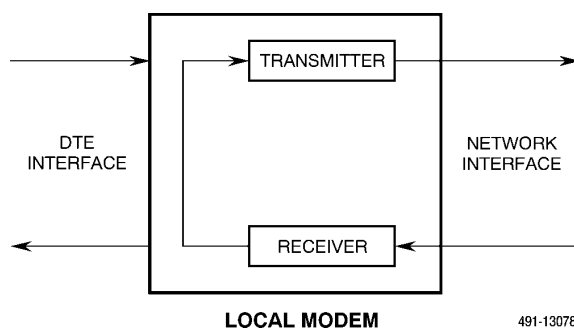


Figure 8-3. Local Digital Loopback

Pattern

Pattern can transmit and receive a 511 bit error rate test pattern. It can also be used with a local analog loopback or a remote digital loopback to simulate data passing

through the modem. For this test to operate properly, the modems must be online and in Synchronous or Asynchronous Direct mode. Otherwise, the message **Invalid:Bfrr Mde** appears when this test is started. (See Figures 8-4 through 8-6.)

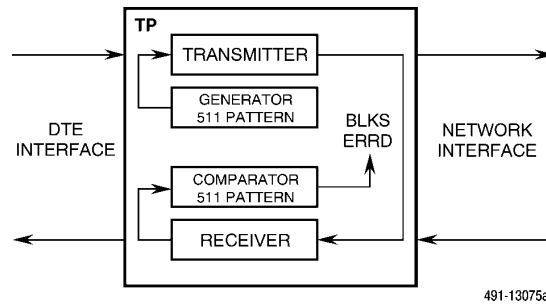


Figure 8-4. Pattern Test and Local Analog Loopback Test

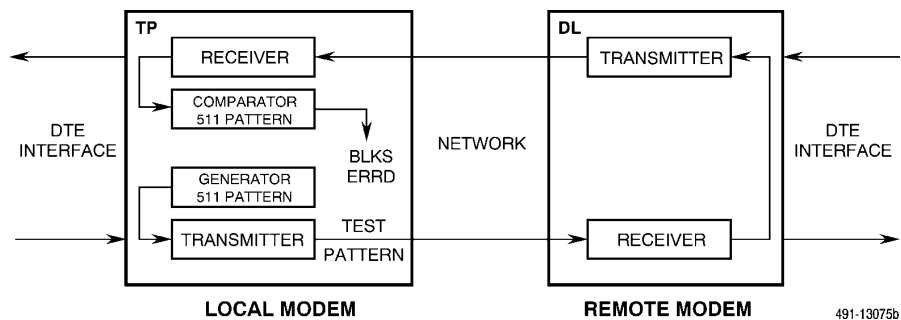


Figure 8-5. Pattern Test and Remote Digital Loopback Test

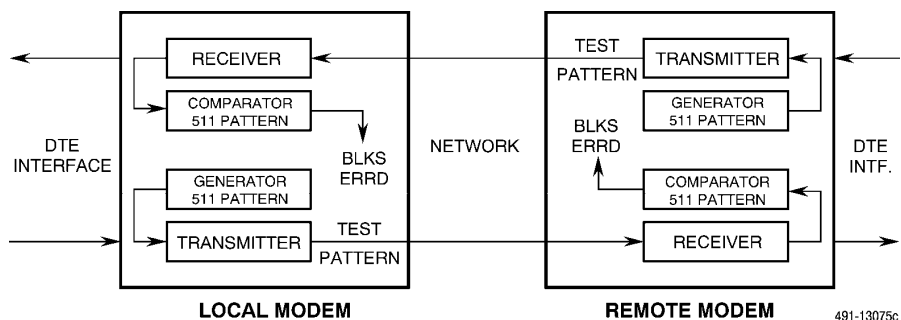
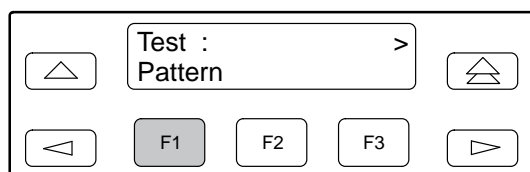
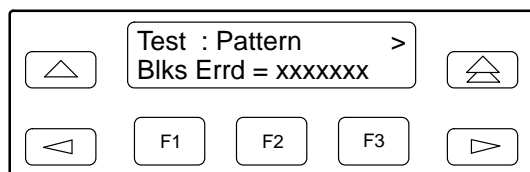


Figure 8-6. End-to-End Pattern Test

To access Pattern from the Test branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Pattern appears. Select Pattern to start this test.



BlksErrd=xxxxxxx displays the number of blocks of data found in error (block size is 1000 bits per block). The message **NoSync** can appear as a value for BlksErrd while the modem's receiver is synchronizing. The message **OvrFlw** can appear as the value for BlksErrd if the counter overflows.

Press the \triangleright key to display **BlksRcvd=xxxxxxx**, number of blocks of data received.

The Pattern test can be exited and reentered without restarting the test. The BlksErrd and BlksRcvd continue counting.

If the Test Timeout configuration option is enabled, **Test Timeout** appears at the conclusion of the test. If it is disabled, the test operates until aborted. For more information on the Test Timeout configuration option, refer to the *Tests* section of Chapter 9.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangleleft key.

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command for Pattern is &T2.

Configure Branch 9

Overview	9-1
Configure Branch	9-4
Editing and Saving a Configuration Option	9-5
Summary	9-6
Configuration Tables	9-7
DTE Interface	9-7
DTE Dialer	9-15
Line Dialer	9-20
Dial Line	9-26
Leased Line	9-29
V.42/MNP/Buffer	9-34
Tests	9-40
Misc	9-42
Security Configuration Options	9-46

Overview

After installing a 3800 Series modem, its software configuration options must be set using either the Diagnostic Control Panel (DCP) or the AT command set. This chapter describes how to access and use the Configure branch of the Top-Level menu via the DCP.

The Configure branch accesses the Edit Area which is a work space where you view and change any configuration options (straps). These configuration options are loaded to the Edit Area from one of five configuration option areas: Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, Customer 2, or Factory.

- **Active (Operating)** is a configuration area containing configuration options currently used by the modem. When the modem is powered on or when a save is performed, the contents of Active (Saved) are loaded into Active (Operating). Any changes made using AT commands directly affect this configuration area.
- **Active (Saved)** is a read from and write to configuration option area containing the most recently saved changes made to any configuration options. In the event of power loss or reset, the modem retrieves these settings from nonvolatile memory.

- **Customer 1** and **Customer 2** are two additional read and write (changeable) configuration areas where you can create and store additional configurations for specific applications.
- **Factory** is a read-only (unchangeable) configuration area containing six sets of predefined configuration options labeled **Async Dial**, **Sync Dial**, **Sync Leased (Answer/Originate)**, **UNIX Dial**, **Cellular (Mobile)**, and **Cellular (PSTN)**. These sets contain the most commonly used configuration options for modems installed in these hardware environments, and give you a head start in configuring your modem. Factory default settings are listed in Appendix G.

NOTE

If you are using AT commands, a period of time can exist in which the contents of Active (Operating) and Active (Saved) differ. Once you issue an AT&W0 (write) command, however, the two storage areas are identical.

Figures 9-1 and 9-2 graphically display the interaction between the edit area and configuration areas as viewed from the perspective of the DCP and the AT command set.

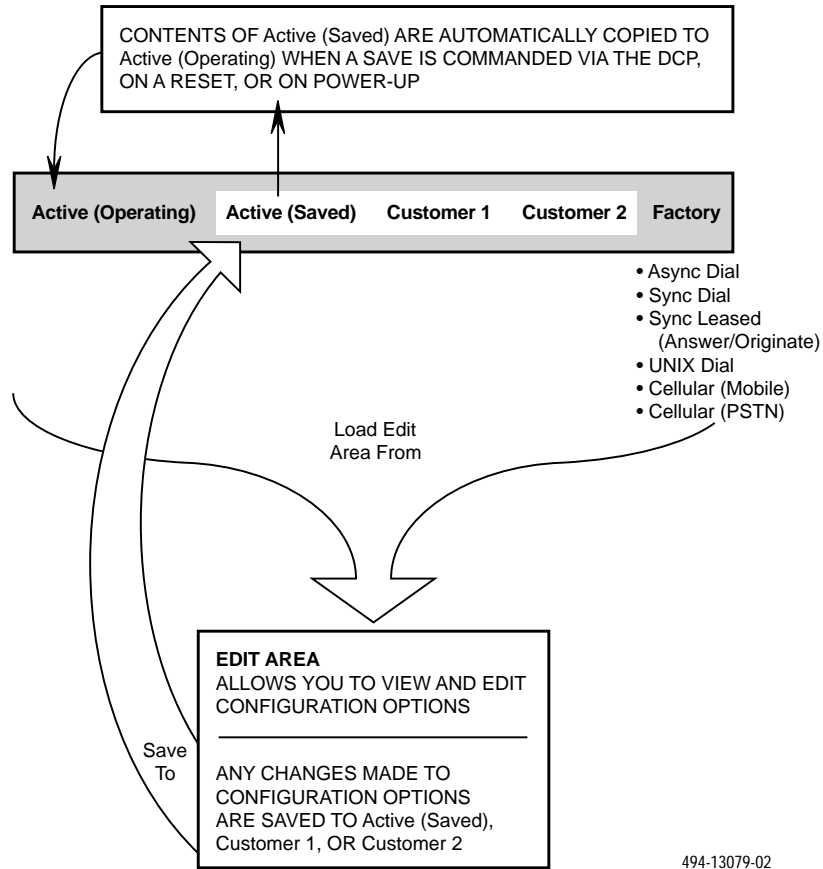


Figure 9-1. DCP Configuration Process

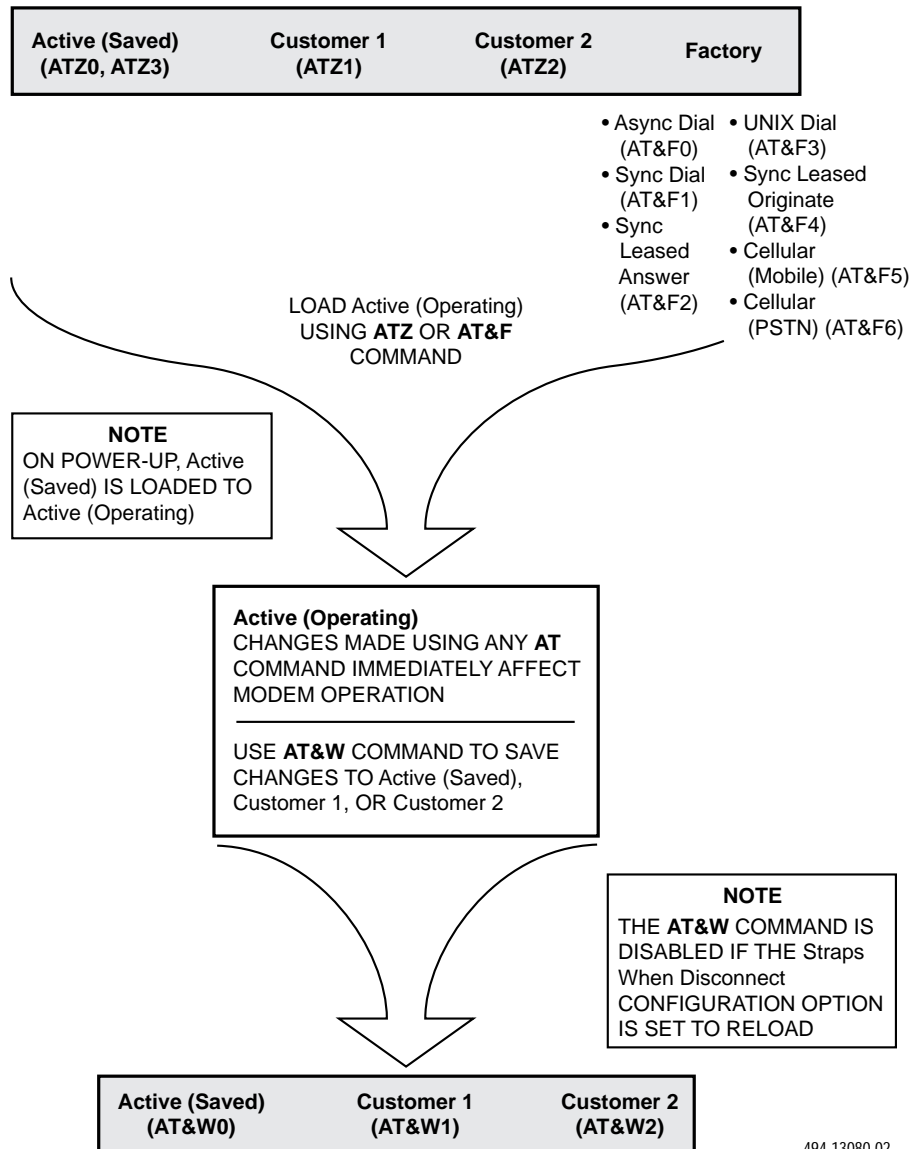
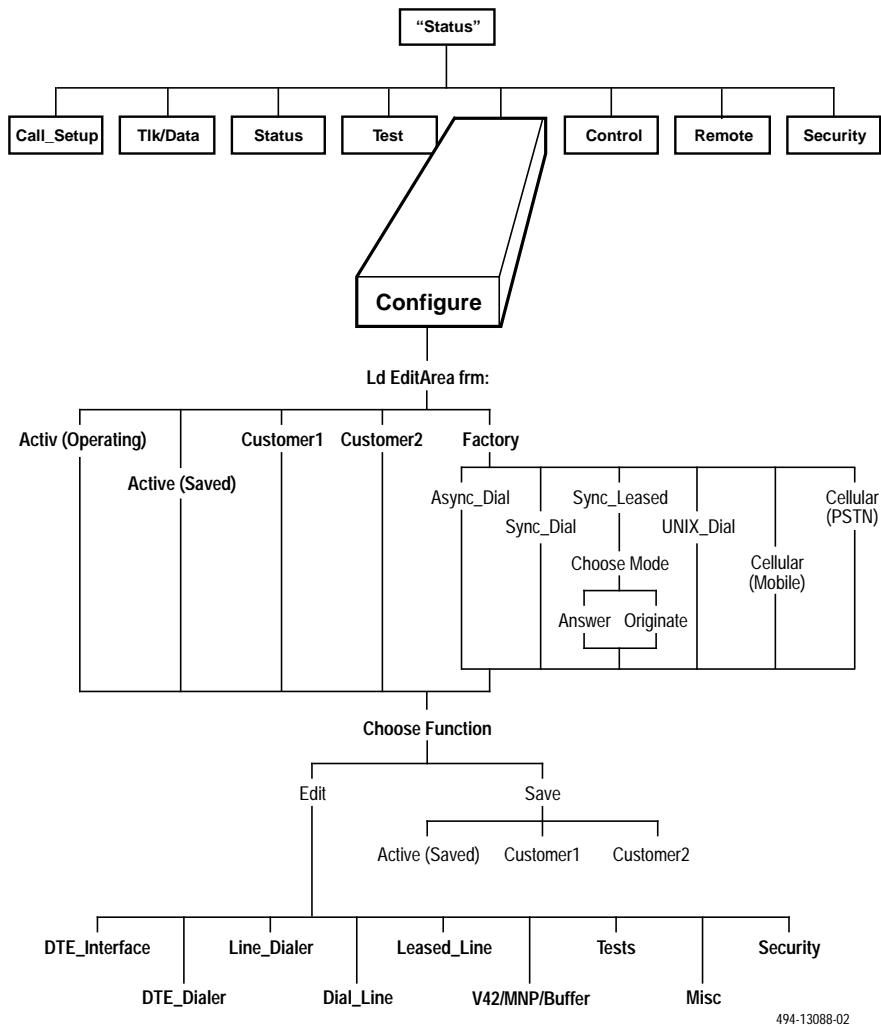


Figure 9-2. AT Command Configuration Process

Configure Branch

The Configure branch of the Top-Level menu contains all of the modem's configuration options (straps) which determine how the modem operates. These configuration options are accessed by scrolling down and across various levels of the Configure branch.

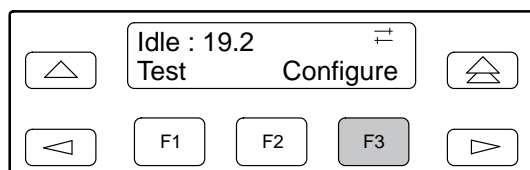


The Configure branch consists of the following three levels:

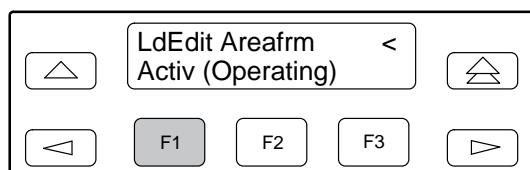
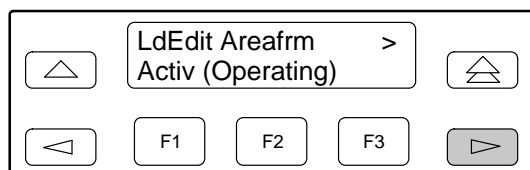
- **Ld EditArea frm.** Allows the selection of the Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, Customer 2, and Factory configuration areas.
- **Choose Function.** Allows you to make changes (Edit) to existing configuration options or write (Save) these changes to either the Active (Saved), Customer 1, or Customer 2 configuration area.
- **Edit Strap Group.** Contains the eight software configuration option groups that determine how the modem operates.

Editing and Saving a Configuration Option

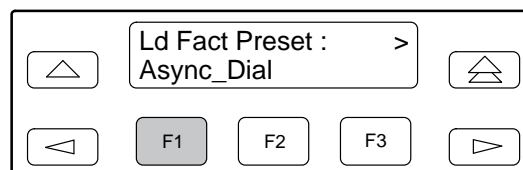
The following example shows how to change the Remote Access Password using the DCP. (If you ever intend to access another 3800 Series modem via the Remote branch of the Top-Level menu, the Remote Access Password must be the same for both modems.) By following these procedures you learn how to load a factory preset configuration area (in this case, Async Dial), how to edit a configuration option (Remote Access Password), and how to save changes to a configuration area (Active (Saved)). The shaded key indicates what key to press.



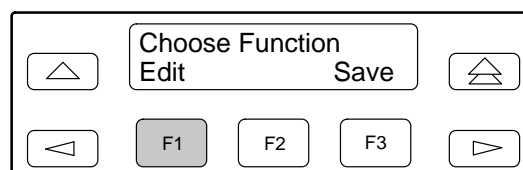
Select Configure from the Top-Level menu.



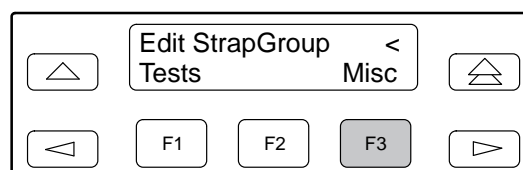
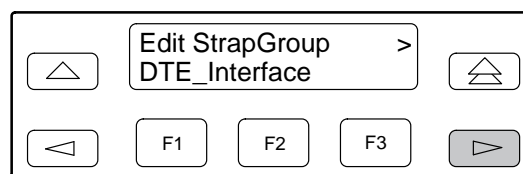
Select the Factory configuration area.



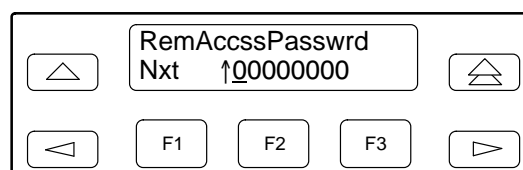
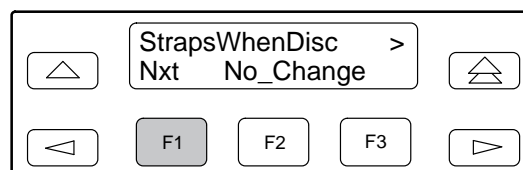
Select Async_Dial.



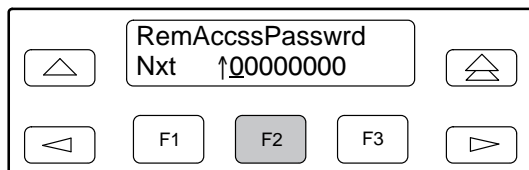
Select Edit.



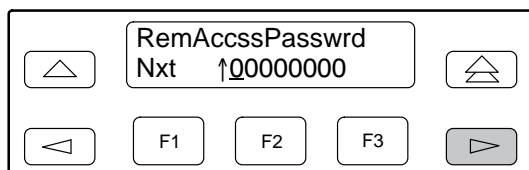
Scroll across the LCD and select the Misc configuration options group.



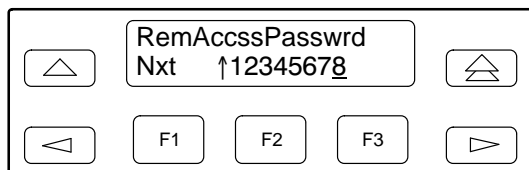
Select Nxt until RemAccssPasswrd appears.



Select the F2 (↑) key to increment password values.

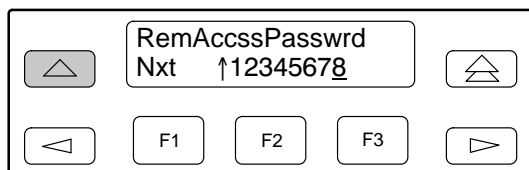


Press the ▷ key to move the cursor to the next position.

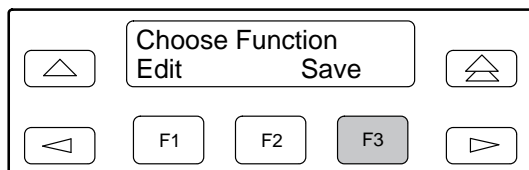


Continue this sequence until you have entered the new password value.

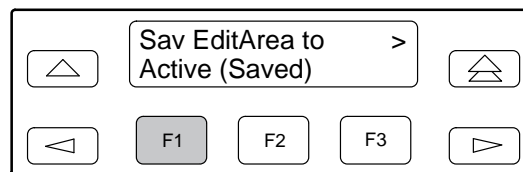
To save the new password to a configuration area, make the following selections.



Press the △ key to scroll up (twice).



Select Save.



Select a configuration area (Active (Saved), Customer 1, or Customer 2) to save the changes.

Select the △ key to exit to the Top-Level menu or select the ▷ key to remain in the Configure branch.

Summary

When using the DCP to edit configuration options, keep the following in mind:

- **Nxt** has two functions. First, it indicates that more configuration options are available within that group. These are accessed by selecting Nxt (pressing F1) and scrolling down to the next configuration option. Second, it indicates that what is displayed on the LCD is the current setting. If you scroll left or right, Nxt disappears and reappears if a new value is selected.
- **End** appears when you have scrolled down to the last configuration option available in that group. Selecting End returns you to the top of the configuration group. You are free to enter that group again or scroll left or right to the next configuration options group.
- The △ key takes you one step up in the Configure branch each time it is pressed.
- The △ key causes you to exit the Configure branch and return to the Top-Level menu. If any changes are made to configuration options, the DCP allows you to save these changes to either the Active (Saved), Customer 1, or Customer 2 configuration areas.
- The ◀ and ▶ keys move selections across the LCD.
- The function keys (F1, F2, F3) select the LCD choice that appears above that function key.

Configuration Tables

The modem's configuration options are arranged into eight groups based upon functionality: DTE Interface (Table 9-1), DTE Dialer (Table 9-2), Line Dialer (Table 9-3), Dial Line (Table 9-4), Leased Line (Table 9-5), V.42/MNP/Buffer (Table 9-6), Tests (Table 9-7), and Misc (Table 9-8).

Throughout these tables, two selections frequently appear on the LCD: Enable and Disable. Unless otherwise stated, Enable selects a configuration option and makes it available for use; Disable makes a configuration option unavailable for use.

The remainder of this chapter discusses each configuration options group in detail, listing factory defaults, definitions, and AT command equivalents.

DTE Interface

The DTE Interface configuration options contain EIA-232-D (CCITT V.24) and asynchronous character format information essential for maintaining a connection and for transmitting data between the DTE and the modem.

Table 9-1 shows each DTE Interface configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

Table 9-1
(1 of 7)
DTE Interface Configuration Options

Async/Sync Mode: Async													
Nxt Async Sync													
<p>Asynchronous/Synchronous Mode. Determines whether the modem operates in Asynchronous mode or Synchronous mode. If the AT command set is enabled and this configuration option is set for Sync, then the modem operates in Async mode when offline.</p> <p>For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, Async is the factory default. For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Sync is the factory default.</p> <p>AT commands for Async Mode are &M0, &M231, &M232, &M235, or &Q0.</p> <p>AT commands for Sync Mode are &M1, &M2, &M3, &M233, &M234, &M236 or &Q1, &Q2, &Q3.</p>													
*Async DTE Rate: 19200													
Nxt 19200 57600 38400 14400 12000 9600 7200 4800 2400 1200 0-300 76800 115200													
<p>Asynchronous DTE Data Rate. Identifies the asynchronous DTE's operating rate to the modem. Data rates from 115,200 bps to 300 bps are supported.</p> <p>To originate calls in 76,800 bps Sun Workstation® environments, use either DCP dialing, DTR dialing, or handset dialing. The modem does not support AT command dialing at this data rate.</p> <p>To prevent losing data in 115,200 bps applications, a 16650 UART on the PC's serial port is required, as well as a communications package which can take advantage of its 16-byte buffer. In addition, a 386 25-MHz (or faster) PC is required, and the RS-232 cable must be 6 feet or less to minimize capacitance.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is ignored in Async Direct mode and synchronous mode since the DTE rate always equals the VF rate.</p> <p>The factory default is 19200 bps.</p> <p>AT prefix determines Async DTE Rate.</p>													
#Data Bits: 8													
Nxt 8 7 9(DirectMde) 6(DirectMde)													
<p>Number of Data Bits. Determines if the data length is composed of 6, 7, 8, or 9 data bits. This data length excludes start, parity, and stop bits.</p> <p>8 – Sets data length to 8 data bits. This is the default for Async mode.</p> <p>7 – Sets data length to 7 data bits. This is the default for Sync mode.</p> <p>9(DirectMode) – Sets data length to 9 data bits. Only valid when Error Control configuration option is set to Direct Mode.</p> <p>6(DirectMode) – Sets data length to 6 data bits. Only valid when Error Control configuration option is set to Direct Mode.</p> <p>The factory default is 8 data bits.</p> <p>NOTE: If the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT or V.25bis Async, then the total character size must equal 10 bits (see DTE Dialer configuration options group). Total character size consists of a start bit, number of data bits, parity bits, and stop bits. V.25bis Async must use 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit. The total character size for Error Control mode or Buffer mode must be 10 bits or less. The total character size for Direct mode must be 11 bits or less.</p> <p>AT prefix determines the async character length.</p>													
* This configuration option only appears if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async.													

Table 9-1
(2 of 7)
DTE Interface Configuration Options

Parity Bit: None					
Nxt	None	Even	Odd	Mark	Space
<p>Parity Bit. Determines type of parity bit. The parity of the DTE must match the parity of the modem. Parity options include None, Even, Odd, Mark, or Space.</p> <p>None – No parity bit is used. This is the default for Async mode.</p> <p>Even – Parity bit is set so that total number of 1's in data bits plus parity bit is even.</p> <p>Odd – Parity bit is set so that total number of 1's in data bits plus parity bit is odd. This is the default for Sync mode.</p> <p>Mark – Parity bit is always set to 1. Only valid if #Data Bits configuration option is set to 7.</p> <p>Space – Parity bit is always set to 0. Only valid if #Data Bits configuration option is set to 7.</p> <p>The factory default is None.</p> <p>NOTE: If the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT or V.25bis Async, then the total character size must equal 10 bits (see DTE Dialer configuration options group). Total character size consists of a start bit, number of data bits, parity bits, and stop bits. V.25bis Async must use 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit. The total character size for Error Control mode or Buffer mode must be 10 bits or less. The total character size for Direct mode must be 11 bits or less.</p> <p>AT prefix determines parity of the character.</p>					
#Stop Bits: 1					
Nxt	1	2			
<p>Number of Stop Bits. Selects 1 or 2 bits to signal the end of a character.</p> <p>The factory default is 1.</p> <p>NOTE: If the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT or V.25bis Async, then the total character size must equal 10 bits (see DTE Dialer configuration options group). Total character size consists of a start bit, number of data bits, parity bits, and stop bits. V.25bis Async must use 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit. The total character size for Error Control mode or Buffer mode must be 10 bits or less. The total character size for Direct mode must be 11 bits or less.</p> <p>AT prefix determines the number of stop bits via autobauding.</p>					

Table 9-1
(3 of 7)
DTE Interface Configuration Options

DTR Action: Ignore							
Nxt	Stndrd_RS232	Ignore	CntrlOnHook	Off=ReloadStrp	Off=CmdMode	CntrlSTXMute	
<p>Data Terminal Ready Action. DTR is a signal from the DTE to the modem indicating that the DTE is connected and ready for operation.</p> <p>Standard RS232 – Allows the DTE to control DTR to the modem as specified in EIA-232-D and CCITT V.24 specifications. If this signal is not present, the modem will not answer or dial. In leased line mode, using direct mode, DTR must be on for the modem to transmit or receive data.</p> <p>Ignore – Modem assumes DTR is always ON. This is used when DTE does not provide DTR to the modem.</p> <p>CntrlOnHook – Modem does not disconnect from the VF line during an active call until DTR is lowered by the attached DTE. This setting is required for applications in which the host processor must reset itself for the next session before the current session is terminated. The setting is ignored if the modem receives a disconnect command from the DCP or from the COMSPHERE 6700 Network Management System.</p> <p>Off=ReloadStrp – Like Standard RS232, except that when DTR is lowered the modem loads the Active (Saved) area into the Active (Operating) area.</p> <p>Off=CmdMode – When the modem is online and DTR is Off for longer than the period specified by the S25 register, the modem enters online Command mode. The ATO command must be issued to return to data mode. This setting has the same effect as Ignore if AT commands are disabled.</p> <p>CntrlSTXMute – Like Standard RS232, except that when DTR is lowered at the answering modem, the modem mutes transmitter output.</p> <p>NOTE: If V.25bis mode is used, then this configuration option must be set for Stndrd_RS232. The DTE must provide DTR to dial or answer a call.</p> <p>When operating over the dial network, this selection forces DTR Action to behave as CT108/2 (Data Terminal Ready). If DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set to DTR=Direct 1, then DTR Action behaves as CT108/1 (Connect Data Set to Line).</p> <p>For Async Dial, Sync Leased, and UNIX Dial, Ignore is the factory default. For Sync Dial, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default.</p> <p>AT command for Ignore is &D0. AT command for Off=CmdMode is &D1. AT command for Standard RS232 is &D2. AT command for Off=ReloadStrp is &D3. AT command for CntrlOnHook is &D4. AT command for CntrlSTXMute is &D5.</p>							
DSR Control: Forced_On							
Nxt	Forced_On	Stndrd_RS232	WinkWhenDisc	Follows_DTR	On_Early	Delay_To_Data	DialBkToggle
<p>Data Data Set Ready Control. DSR is a signal from the modem to the DTE indicating the modem is connected and ready for operation.</p> <p>Forced On – Forces DSR output ON constantly. This is usually used for leased-line applications and when the DTE requires DSR to always be ON.</p> <p>Standard RS232 – Allows the modem to control DSR to the DTE. The modem raises DSR when it begins the handshake process. DSR lowers upon disconnect. The modem may not be ready to receive data until DSR, CTS, and LSD are active.</p> <p>An ON state indicates to the DTE that the modem is ready to receive data. An Off state indicates that the modem is not ready to receive data, and the DTE will not send data to the modem. During a Local Analog Loop and a Remote Digital Loop, DSR is ON.</p> <p>Wink When Disconnect – DSR is normally forced ON, but is turned Off for 1 to 2 seconds upon a disconnect.</p> <p>Follows DTR – When the modem receives DTR from the DTE, it sends DSR to the DTE.</p> <p>On Early – DSR is low when the modem is in the idle state. DSR goes high immediately upon a command to enter Data mode. This setting is required for some modem pooling applications.</p>							

Table 9-1
(4 of 7)
DTE Interface Configuration Options

DSR Control (cont'd)
<p>Delay to Data – Operation is similar to the Standard RS232 setting except that DSR does not turn ON until the modem enters Data mode. Normally, the modem raises DSR when it begins the handshaking process.</p> <p>Use this setting when the DTE cannot operate with a long DSR-to-CTS delay (common for V.32bis modulation) or when dial access security is enabled and requires a DTE-side password entry. Often, the DTE cannot accept the long delay between DSR and CTS turning ON due to the remote user entering the DTE-side password.</p> <p>Dial Backup Toggle – DSR is turned off during a dial backup attempt in Leased mode, and on when such an attempt completes. DSR is also turned off when a disconnect begins, and turned on when the disconnect is complete.</p> <p>For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, Forced_On is the factory default. For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default.</p> <p>AT command for Forced On is &S0. AT command for Standard RS232 is &S1. AT command for Wink When Disconnect is &S2. AT command for Follows DTR is &S3. AT command for On Early is &S4. AT command for Delay to Data is &S5. AT command for Dial Backup Toggle is &S6.</p>
RTS Action: Ignore Nxt Ignore Stndrd_RS232 Sim_Cntl_Car
<p>Request-to-Send Action. RTS is a signal from the DTE to the modem indicating the DTE has data to send to the modem.</p> <p>Ignore – Modem assumes RTS is always ON. Use this selection when the DTE does not provide RTS to the modem.</p> <p>Standard RS232 – Allows the DTE to control RTS to the modem in normal EIA-232-D operation. In direct mode, RTS must be ON for the DTE to transmit to the modem.</p> <p>Simulated Control Carrier – RTS input controls the remote modem's LSD signal. This is used for DTEs that require Line Signal Detect (LSD) to toggle ON and Off to simulate half-duplex operation.</p> <p>NOTE: If RTS Action is set for simulated control carrier, then the remote modem's LSD Control configuration option must be set for Simulated Control Carrier. Simulated Control Carrier conforms to V.13 specifications. This setting is ignored when the modem is configured for Asynchronous mode and RTS/CTS flow control is selected.</p> <p>For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, Ignore is the factory default. For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default.</p> <p>AT command for Standard RS232 is &R0. AT command for Ignore is &R1. AT command for Simulated Control Carrier is &R2.</p>

Table 9-1
(5 of 7)
DTE Interface Configuration Options

CTS Control: Forced_On Nxt Forced_On Stndrd_RS232 WinkWhenDisc Follows_DTR
<p>Clear-to-Send Control. CTS is a signal from the modem to the DTE indicating that it can accept data from the DTE.</p> <p>NOTE: When CTS flow control or CTS/RTS flow control is enabled, CTS will turn ON and Off regardless of the setting of CTS Control.</p> <p>Forced On – CTS is forced ON at all times. Use this selection for most asynchronous applications.</p> <p>Standard RS232 – In Synchronous mode, forces the state of CTS to follow the state of RTS in normal EIA-232-D operation. The minimum time that elapses between CTS and RTS is determined by the RTS/CTS Delay configuration option. Use this setting for most synchronous applications.</p> <p>In AT Command mode, CTS goes low just prior to DSR going active and goes high when the modem enters Data mode. This operation prevents losing data in applications which begin transmitting as soon as DSR and CTS are both active.</p> <p>Wink When Disconnect – CTS is normally forced ON, but is turned Off for 1 to 2 seconds upon a disconnect. Use this for most UNIX applications.</p> <p>Follows DTR – The state of CTS follows the state of DTR. When DTR turns ON, CTS turns ON. When DTR turns Off, CTS turns Off.</p> <p>For Async Dial, Forced On is the factory default. For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default. For UNIX Dial, WinkWhenDisc is the factory default.</p> <p>AT command for Forced On is \D0. AT command for Standard RS232 is \D1. AT command for Wink When Disconnect is \D2. AT command for Follows DTR is \D3.</p>
RTS/CTS Delay: 0 msec Nxt 0msec 10msec 50msec 150msec 600msec
<p>Request-to-Send/Clear-to-Send Delay. RTS/CTS Delay sets the delay time between the modem receiving RTS from the DTE and the modem sending CTS to the DTE.</p> <p>This delay is only valid in Async Direct mode and synchronous applications when it is necessary to have a short delay between the time the DTE raises RTS and the time the modem presents CTS to allow the DTE to send data.</p> <p>NOTE: For this configuration option to be valid, both the RTS Action and the CTS Control configuration options must be set for Stndrd_RS232. If RTS Action is set for Ignore, RTS is always ON and this configuration option has no effect.</p> <p>The factory default is 0 milliseconds.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S26 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 0 to 255 in 10 millisecond increments.</p>

Table 9-1
(6 of 7)
DTE Interface Configuration Options

<p>LSD Control: Stndrd_RS232 Nxt Stndrd_RS232 Forced_On WinkWhenDisc Follows_DTR Sim_Cntrl_Car =DTR/DiscOff BridgeRetrain</p> <p>Line Signal Detect Control. LSD is a signal indicating that the carrier signal is being received from the remote modem. It is normally turned Off to the DTE when the power level of the received carrier signal drops below the carrier detect threshold.</p> <p>Standard RS232 – LSD is ON when the modem detects the remote modem's carrier signal. LSD turns Off when the carrier signal strength drops below carrier detect threshold.</p> <p>Forced On – Forces LSD to be ON at all times.</p> <p>Wink When Disconnect – LSD is normally forced ON, but can be turned Off for 1 to 2 seconds upon a disconnect. This is used for UNIX DTEs.</p> <p>Follows DTR – The state of LSD follows the state of DTR. When DTR turns ON, LSD turns ON. When DTR turns Off, LSD turns Off.</p> <p>Simulated Control Carrier – LSD follows the state of RTS of the remote DTE via the V.13 simulated control carrier signaling. This is required for hosts that cannot support full-duplex operation.</p> <p>NOTE: If LSD Control is set for simulated control carrier, then the RTS Action configuration option on the remote modem must be set for Simulated Control Carrier.</p> <p>=DTR/Disconnect Off – The state of LSD follows the state of DTR except when disconnecting once a connection is established. In this instance, DTR remains ON and LSD turns Off. DTR must then toggle Off and then ON again for LSD to turn ON. This setting is required for AT&T DATAKIT® dial-out applications.</p> <p>BridgeRetrain – LSD behaves as if it were set for Standard RS232, except that it is turned off when a retrain condition lasts longer than 10 seconds, and turned on again when no retrain condition is detected for a period of 10 seconds.</p> <p>NOTE: If LSD Control is set for =DTR/Disconnect Off, then the DTR Action configuration option must be set for Stndrd_RS232.</p> <p>For Async Dial, Sync Dial, and Sync Leased, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default.</p> <p>For UNIX Dial, WinkWhenDisc is the factory default.</p> <p>AT command for Forced On is &C0. AT command for Standard RS232 is &C1. AT command for Wink When Disconnect is &C2. AT command for Follows DTR is &C3. AT command for Simulated Control Carrier is &C4. AT command for =DTR/Disconnect Off is &C5. AT command for BridgeRetrain is &C6.</p>
<p>TX Clock Source: Internal Nxt Internal External RXC_Loop</p> <p>Transmit Clock Source. Determines the source of timing for synchronous data transmitted from the DTE.</p> <p>Internal – The transmit data's clock source is derived from the modem's internal clock and output on Pin 15 (TXC) of the EIA-232-D interface.</p> <p>External – The transmit data's clock source is provided by the DTE on Pin 24 (EXT) on the EIA-232-D interface.</p> <p>Receive Clock Loop – The modem's transmit clock is derived from its received signal and is output on Pin 15 (TXC) of the EIA-232-D interface.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option only appears if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Sync.</p> <p>The factory default is Internal.</p> <p>AT command for Internal is &X0. AT command for External is &X1. AT command for RXC Loop is &X2.</p>

Table 9-1
(7 of 7)
DTE Interface Configuration Options

CT111_Rate Cntl: Disable Nxt Disable Fallback1 Fallback2
<p>CT111 Rate Control. Allows the DTE to control modem rate via Pin 23 of the EIA-232-D interface. This option determines the effect of the DTE Rate control signal. CT111 is also known as CH on the EIA-232-D interface.</p> <p>Disable – Disregards CT111 Rate Control.</p> <p>Fallback1 – Forces the modem to decrease its configured data rate to the next lower data rate when CT111 is Off. Valid only for V.32bis modulation. Modem will only fall back within the same modulation scheme. When CT111 turns ON, the modem returns to its previous data rate.</p> <p>Fallback2 – Forces the modem to decrease two data rates while remaining in the same modulation scheme. When CT111 turns ON, the modem returns to its previous data rate.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is only valid in Async Direct mode and Synchronous mode. For proper operation, disable the V32bis Autorate and V32bis Automode configuration options.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S61 = n, where n is 0 for Disable, 1 for Fallback1, and 2 for Fallback2.</p>
DTE Rate=VF: Disable End Disable Enable
<p>DTE Rate = VF Rate. Forces the data rate of the connection between the DTE (computer) and the modem to be the same as the VF (telephone line) rate.</p> <p>Disable – The DTE rate is the value of the Async DTE Rate configuration option.</p> <p>Enable – The DTE rate is identical with the VF rate.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S90 = n, where n is 0 for Disable, and 1 for Enable.</p>

DTE Dialer

The DTE Dialer configuration options establish the DTE-to-modem protocol for call establishment and control.

Table 9-2 shows each DTE Dialer configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

Table 9-2
(1 of 5)
DTE Dialer Configuration Options

DTE Dialer Type: AT								
Nxt	AT	Disable	V25bis_Async	V25bis_Bsync	V25bis_HDLC	DTR=Dtrs	RS366A	AT&T_Exclusv
Data Terminal Equipment Dialer Type. Identifies to the modem the type of dialing method and protocol used by the DTE.								
AT – Allows AT command protocol to be used as a method for entering commands and dialing when used in an asynchronous application. This is the only valid setting for leased-line applications.								
NOTE: The modem will not respond to AT commands if DTE Dialer Type is not set for AT.								
Disable – Disables any type of DTE dialing method. Dialing can only be performed using the DCP's Dial command or attached telephone.								
V.25bis Async – Selects V.25bis Async as the dialing method and protocol used by the modem. The character length must be 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit.								
V.25bis Bsync – Selects V.25bis Bsync as the dialing method and protocol used by the modem. This is also known as character-oriented protocol. This framing protocol uses two synchronous control characters and a start-of-text control character before the text block and an end-of-text control character after the text block. The character length must be 7 data bits with odd parity and 1 stop bit.								
V.25bis HDLC – Selects V.25bis HDLC as the dialing method and protocol used by the modem. This is also known as bit-oriented protocol. This framing protocol uses flag, address and control characters before the text block and a frame sequence check and flag after the text block.								
DTR=Dtrs – Allows the modem to automatically dial the number stored in directory location 1 whenever DTR turns ON.								
NOTE: DTR dialing cannot be used if dial access security is enabled.								
RS-366A – Selects EIA RS-366-A as the dialing method and protocol; used (and available) only with Model 3811 modems. RS-366-A is a parallel interface typically used in older IBM® synchronous environments. Refer to Table E-2 in Appendix E for pinout information.								
AT&T Exclusive – Enables a subset of the proprietary AT&T command set, which is required for some applications that use AT&T equipment. Currently, the only application supported is AT&T DATAKIT.								
For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, AT is the factory default.								
For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Disable is the factory default.								
AT commands for AT are &M0, &M1, &M3, &Q0, &Q1, and &Q3.								
AT commands for Disable are &M231, &M236, &Q231, and &Q236.								
AT commands for V.25bis Async are &M232 and &Q232.								
AT commands for V.25bis Bsync are &M233 and &Q233.								
AT commands for V.25bis HDLC are &M234 and &Q234.								
AT commands for DTR=Dtrs dialing are &M2 and &Q2.								

Table 9-2
(2 of 5)
DTE Dialer Configuration Options

<p>*AT Escape Char: 043 ASCII Nxt ↑ 043 ASCII</p> <p>AT Escape Character. The escape sequence (+++) allows you to move back and forth between Command mode and Data mode. The ASCII value of the escape character (43 ASCII) can be set to any ASCII value from 1 ASCII to 255 ASCII. However, the escape character is disabled if a value greater than 127 ASCII is entered. When disabled, the call must be disconnected to return to Command mode.</p> <p>The factory default is 43 (ASCII AT escape character).</p> <p>AT command is S-register S2 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 1 to 127. AT command to disable is S-register S2 = <i>n</i> where <i>n</i> is a value from 128 to 255. (When disabled, the modem cannot return to Command mode unless disconnected.)</p>
<p>*Escape GuardTim: 1sec Nxt 1sec 200msec 400msec 600msec 800msec 2sec</p> <p>Escape Guard Time. Determines the length of the required pause before and after the escape sequence is issued. The guard time prevents the modem from interpreting data as the escape sequence characters.</p> <p>The factory default is 1 second.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S12 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 0 to 255 in 20 millisecond increments.</p>
<p>*BreakForceEscap: Disable Nxt Disable Enable</p> <p>Break Forces Escape. Determines whether or not the modem should enter Command mode when it receives a break character from the DTE.</p> <p>Disable – A break character is sent to the remote end. Enable – Modem escapes into AT Command mode, and a break character is not sent to the remote end.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT commands to enable are \K0, \K2, or \K4. AT commands to disable are \K1, \K3, or \K5.</p>
<p>*CommandCharEcho: Enable Nxt Enable Disable</p> <p>Command Character Echo. Controls whether or not characters are echoed back to the DTE when the modem is in Command mode.</p> <p>The factory default is Enable.</p> <p>AT command to disable Command Data Echo is E0. AT command to enable Command Data Echo is E1.</p>
<p>*CarriageRtn Char: 013 ASCII Nxt ↑ 013 ASCII</p> <p>Carriage Return Character. Allows you to change the ASCII character used to terminate an AT command to any ASCII value from 0 to 127.</p> <p>The factory default is 13 (ASCII carriage return).</p> <p>AT command for Carriage Return Character is S-register S3 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 0 to 127.</p>
<p>* This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer Type is configured for AT.</p>

Table 9-2
(3 of 5)
DTE Dialer Configuration Options

<p>*Backspace Char: 008 ASCII Nxt ↑ 008 ASCII</p> <p>Backspace Character. Sets the character used to perform a backspace in Command mode. The factory default is 08 (ASCII backspace character). AT command is S-register S5 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 0 to 127.</p>
<p>*Linefeed Char: 010 ASCII Nxt ↑ 010 ASCII</p> <p>Line Feed Character. Sets the character used to perform a line feed in Command mode for responses from the modem. The factory default is 10 (ASCII line feed character). AT command for Line Feed Character is S-register S4 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 0 to 127.</p>
<p>*Result Codes: Enable Nxt Enable Disable EnableInOrig</p> <p>Result Codes. Result codes are informational messages (such as Connect and Ring) sent from the modem and displayed on the asynchronous DTE terminal. (For a list of result codes, refer to Table B-1 in Appendix B.)</p> <p>Enable – Modem sends result codes to the DTE. Disable – Modem does not send result codes to the DTE. EnableInOrig – For UNIX applications, enable result codes only on the originating modem. This prevents the DTE on the answer side from interpreting result codes as login attempts. For Async Dial, Enable is the factory default. For UNIX Dial, EnableInOrig is the factory default. AT command to enable is Q0. AT command to disable is Q1. AT command to enable in Originate mode is Q2.</p>
<p>*ExtendResltCode: Enable Nxt Enable Disable Add/EC Add/V42,MNP Use_DTE_Rate</p> <p>Extended Result Codes. Informational messages such as VF data rate and Error Control are displayed with the result codes. (For a list of Extended Result Codes, refer to Table B-1 in Appendix B.)</p> <p>Enable – Result codes include NO DIALTONE, BUSY, NO ANSWER, and CONNECT xxxx (where xxxx is the VF data rate). Disable – Only OK, CONNECT, RING, NO CARRIER, and ERROR result codes appear. NOTE: NO DIALTONE is valid only if Dial Tone Detect configuration option is enabled. BUSY appears if Busy Detect configuration option is enabled. Add/EC – Places the EC suffix after the result code text if error control is used. For example, CONNECT 9600/EC Add/V.42,MNP – Places either the /V.42 or /MNP suffix after the result code text if data compression is used. For example, CONNECT 9600/V42b. Use DTE Rate – Allows the DTE rate to be displayed in the Connect message instead of the line rate. This feature is required in some modem pooling applications. The factory default is Enable. AT command to disable is X0. AT commands to enable are X1, X2, X3, or X4. AT command for Add/EC is X5. AT command for Add/V42, MNP is X6. AT command for Use DTE Rate is X7.</p>
<p>* This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer Type is configured for AT.</p>

Table 9-2
(4 of 5)
DTE Dialer Configuration Options

<p>*ResultCode Form: Words Nxt Words Numbers (1) Numbers (2)</p> <p>Result Codes Format. Controls whether or not result codes appear as words or as numeric codes. Some DTEs do not recognize Result Codes as words; therefore, numbers are required. The Numbers (2) format is required for some modem pooling applications. (For a list of result codes, refer to Table B-1 in Appendix B.)</p> <p>The factory default is Words.</p> <p>AT command for Numbers (1) is V0. AT command for Words format is V1. AT command for Numbers (2) is V2.</p>
<p>*AT Cmnd Mode: Normal Nxt Normal No_ERROR NoStrapOrERR</p> <p>AT Command Mode. Determines how the modem responds to valid and invalid AT commands.</p> <p>NOTE: Since this configuration option affects AT commands, it cannot be changed by the AT&F command. However, it can be changed by selecting a factory preset configuration via the DCP.</p> <p>Normal – Allows normal operation of the AT command set. The modem acts upon all valid AT commands and issues the ERROR result code for invalid commands. If a string with multiple commands is entered, then an invalid command within that string will prevent the execution of subsequent valid commands.</p> <p>No ERROR – Operates similar to Normal mode, however, the modem does not issue an ERROR result code for invalid commands. When an invalid command is encountered, the modem ignores it and issues the OK result code. If a string with multiple commands is entered, then an invalid command within that string will not prevent the execution of subsequent valid commands.</p> <p>No Strap or ERROR – Ignores all AT commands (including valid commands) that cause a configuration option to change. Only nonconfiguring commands (for example ATD, ATA, and ATI) are executed; the ERROR result code is never returned.</p> <p>The factory default is Normal.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S84 = n, where n is 0 or 231 for Normal, 1 or 232 for No ERROR, or 2 or 233 for No Strap or ERROR.</p>
<p>V25bis Coding: ASCII Nxt ASCII EBCDIC</p> <p>V.25bis Coding. Identifies to the modem whether the DTE is using ASCII code or EBCDIC code for V.25bis commands. The modem responds to the DTE using the same coding.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer is configured for V25bis HDLC or V25bis Bsync.</p> <p>The factory default is ASCII.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S62 = n, where n is 0 for ASCII or 1 for EBCDIC.</p>
<p>V25bis IdleFill: Mark Nxt Mark Flag</p> <p>V.25bis Idle Fill. Determines whether a mark or flag is used as an idle fill character for the DTE. The modem responds to the DTE using the same idle fill.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer is configured for V25bis HDLC.</p> <p>The factory default is Mark.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S63 = n, where n is 0 for Mark or 1 for Flag.</p>
<p>* This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer Type is configured for AT.</p>

Table 9-2
(5 of 5)
DTE Dialer Configuration Options

V.25b NewLineChr: CR+LF Nxt CR+LF CR LF
<p>V.25bis New Line Character. Sets the modem for the command line terminator used by the DTE in V.25bis Async mode. The modem responds to the DTE using the same line terminator.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer is configured for V25bis Async.</p> <p>The factory default is CR+LF.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S64 = n, where n is 0 for carriage return and line feed, 1 for carriage return, or 2 for line feed.</p>
DTR Cont Repeat: Disable End Disable Enable
<p>DTR Cont Repeat. Determines whether automatic redialing stops after the directory locations defined by DTR Auto Redial (S37) have all been tried unsuccessfully once. If DTR Cont Repeat is enabled, automatic redialing starts again with directory location 1. The default is Disable.</p> <p>A redial attempt is made in response to a bad phone number, a busy signal, no answer, or no quiet answer. However, a lockout from redialing occurs if ten successive failing call attempts are made to the same number.</p> <p>DTR Cont Repeat is accessible only if the DTE Dialer Type is DTR=Dtrs.</p> <p>Disable – Automatic redialing will not be repeated.</p> <p>Enable – Automatic will be repeated if necessary.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S38 = n, where n is 0 for Disable and 1 for Enable.</p>

Line Dialer

The Line Dialer configuration options establish parameters used by the modem to answer or originate calls.

Table 9-3 shows each Line Dialer configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

Table 9-3
(1 of 6)
Line Dialer Configuration Options

AutoAnswerRing#: 1 Nxt 1 Disable 2 4 6 8 10
<p>Auto-Answer Ring Count. Determines the number of rings necessary before the answering modem answers an incoming call. For example, if this option is set for 2, then the answering modem answers after the second ring.</p> <p>NOTE: Although DCP selections are limited (1, 2, 4, 6, 8, or 10), values set by AT commands can display from 1 to 255 rings.</p> <p>Disable – If selected, the modem must be answered using either the DCP's Answer command or Tlk/Data function or via AT commands.</p> <p>The factory default is 1.</p> <p>AT command to disable is S0 = 0.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S0 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a ring count from 1 to 255.</p>
Dialer Type: Tone Nxt Tone Pulse
<p>Dialer Type. Selects either tone (DTMF) dialing or pulse (rotary) dialing mode.</p> <p>The factory default is Tone.</p> <p>AT command for tone dialing is T.</p> <p>AT command for pulse dialing is P.</p>
DialTone Detect: Enable Nxt Enable Disable
<p>Dial Tone Detect. Sets the modem for dial tone detection (enable) or blind dialing (disable).</p> <p>Enable – Modem disconnects the call if a dial tone is not detected within 10 seconds and displays No Dial Tone on both the LCD and asynchronous DTE terminal.</p> <p>Disable – Modem dials a call whether or not it detects a dial tone on the line. This is known as blind dialing. The period of time the modem waits before dialing is specified in the Blind Dial Pause configuration option.</p> <p>The factory default is Enable.</p> <p>AT commands to disable are X0, X1, and X3.</p> <p>AT commands to enable are X2, X4, X5, X6, and X7.</p>

Table 9-3
(2 of 6)
Line Dialer Configuration Options

Blind Dial Paus: 2sec Nxt 2sec 4sec 6sec 8sec 10sec 20sec							
<p>Blind Dial Pause. Determines how long the modem waits before dialing a telephone number when DialTone Detect is disabled.</p> <p>NOTE: The Blind Dial Pause configuration option only appears when the Dial Tone Detect configuration option is disabled.</p> <p>The factory default is 2sec.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S6 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 2 to 255 in 1-second increments.</p>							
BusyTone Detect: Enable Nxt Enable Disable							
<p>Busy Tone Detect. Sets the modem to monitor for Busy Tone (Enable) or ignore Busy Tone (Disable).</p> <p>This configuration option is normally enabled; however, if the modem receives false busy tones, this configuration option can be disabled and the modem ignores all busy tones.</p> <p>The factory default is Enable.</p> <p>AT commands to disable are X0, X1, and X2.</p> <p>AT commands to enable are X3, X4, X5, X6, and X7.</p>							
“,” Pause Time: 2sec Nxt 2sec 4sec 6sec 8sec 10sec 20sec							
<p>Pause Time. Determines the number of seconds the modem pauses when it encounters a comma (,) in the dial command string.</p> <p>NOTE: Although DCP selections are limited (2, 4, 6, 8, 10, or 20), values set by the AT commands can display from 0 to 255 seconds.</p> <p>The factory default is 2sec.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S8 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 0 to 255 in 1-second increments.</p>							
NoAnswer Timeout: 45sec Nxt 45sec 30sec 60sec 120sec							
<p>No Answer Abort Time-out. Determines the number of seconds an originating modem waits before abandoning a call attempt when no answer tone is received.</p> <p>NOTE: Although DCP selections are limited (30, 45, 60, or 120), values set by AT commands can display from 1 to 255 seconds.</p> <p>The factory default is 45sec.</p> <p>AT command for No Answer Timeout is S-register S7 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 1 to 255 in 1-second increments.</p>							

Table 9-3
(3 of 6)
Line Dialer Configuration Options

Fast Disconnect: Disable Nxt Disable Enable
<p>Fast Disconnect. Allows the modem to disconnect immediately after receiving a disconnect command from a local DTE or its own diagnostic control panel.</p> <p>Disable – The modem follows its normal disconnect sequence by issuing a cleardown sequence or long space disconnect. This is also known as a graceful disconnect since the other modem receives advance notice of a disconnection.</p> <p>Enable – Use this setting if the DTE requires that the modem be made available as soon as possible after receiving a disconnect command.</p> <p>NOTE: This abrupt method of disconnecting may cause problems with the remote modem, which may interpret the disconnection as an error instead of a valid disconnect.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S85 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Disable and 1 for Enable.</p>
Line Crnt Disc: Enab(>8msec) Nxt Enab(>8msec) Enab(>90msec) Disable
<p>Line Current Disconnect. Determines the modem's response to short interruptions of line current. The loss of line current is one method of disconnecting a call.</p> <p>Enable > 8-millisecond – Disconnects the modems if line current is disrupted for more than 8 milliseconds.</p> <p>Enable > 90-millisecond – Disconnects the modems if line current is disrupted for more than 90-milliseconds. Use this setting if the modem constantly disconnects when set for Enab(>8msec).</p> <p>Disable – Ignores any disruptions in line current such as call waiting.</p> <p>The factory default is Enab(>8msec).</p> <p>AT command is S-register S65 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Enable (>8 msec), 1 for Enable (>90 msec), and 2 for Disable.</p>
Long Space Disc: Enable Nxt Enable Disable
<p>Long Space Disconnect. Determines the modem's response to a continuous spacing condition sent from the remote modem when it goes on-hook. Issuing a long space is one method of disconnecting a call.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is ignored when the modem operates in Synchronous mode or Dial Backup mode.</p> <p>Enable – Modem disconnects if it receives a continuous space from the DTE. The modem's transmitter will transmit 4 seconds of long space upon a disconnect.</p> <p>Disable – Modem does not disconnect if it receives a continuous space from the DTE. Modem will not transmit a long space disconnect.</p> <p>For Async Dial, UNIX Dial, and Sync Leased, Enable is the factory default. For Sync Dial, Disable is the factory default.</p> <p>AT command for Disable is Y0. AT command for Enable is Y1.</p>

Table 9-3
(4 of 6)
Line Dialer Configuration Options

No Carrier Disc: 2sec					
Nxt	2sec	5sec	Disable	10sec	20sec
<p>No Carrier Disconnect. If the modem no longer receives carrier from the remote modem, it disconnects the call. This configuration option determines how long carrier is Off before the modem disconnects. Loss of carrier is one method of disconnecting a call.</p> <p>2, 5, 10, 20 sec – Modem disconnects if carrier turns Off for more than 2 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds, or 20 seconds.</p> <p>Disable – Modem does not disconnect if carrier turns Off.</p> <p>The factory default is 2sec.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S10 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 255 for disable or 0 to 254 in 0.1 second increments for enable.</p>					
No Data Disc: Disable					
Nxt	Disable	10min	30min	60min	
<p>No Data Disconnect. Forces the modem to disconnect if no data is transmitted or received within a specified amount of time.</p> <p>Disable – Modem remains connected despite the lack of data flow.</p> <p>10, 30, 60 min – Modem disconnects if data is not received or transmitted within 10-minute, 30-minute, or 60-minute intervals.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable. The reloading of factory defaults does not affect No Data Disconnect.</p> <p>AT command to enable is \T<i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 1 minute to 255 minutes. AT command to disable is \T0.</p>					
NoDataDiscTrig					
Nxt	TXD or RXD	TXD and RXD	TXD Only	RXD Only	
<p>No Data Disconnect Trigger Signal. Works in conjunction with No Data Disconnect (\T), and determines whether Pin 2 (transmit data) or Pin 3 (receive data) of the modem's RS-232 serial interface is monitored so that the modem can disconnect the call if there is no activity for a certain period of time.</p> <p>The No Data Disconnect Trigger Signal configuration option is unavailable and is not displayed on the DCP when No Data Disconnect is disabled. The factory default is TXD or RXD. The reloading of factory defaults does not affect No Data Disconnect Trigger Signal.</p> <p>TXD or RXD – Disconnect if no data transmitted or received for specified period.</p> <p>TXD and RXD – Disconnect if no data transmitted and received for specified period.</p> <p>TXD Only – Disconnect if no data transmitted for specified period.</p> <p>RXD Only – Disconnect if no data received for specified period.</p> <p>AT command is S80 = <i>n</i>:</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">S80 = 0 Transmit or Receive S80 = 1 Transmit Only S80 = 2 Receive Only S80 = 3 Transmit and Receive</p>					

Table 9-3
(5 of 6)
Line Dialer Configuration Options

Auto Make Busy: Disable										
Nxt	Disable	Enable								
<p>Automatic Make Busy. Forces the modem to go off-hook under the following conditions: a local analog loopback is performed, a self-test is performed, or if the modem is switched to the service line. This option is only valid with the Model 3811 and does not appear on the Model 3810's or Model 3820's LCD.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option should only be used when the modem is located behind a user's Private Branch Exchange (PBX). The Make Busy Network Interface Module (NIM) must be installed on the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. Refer to the <i>COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual</i>.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S40 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Disable and 1 for Enable.</p>										
MakeBusyViaDTR: Disable										
Nxt	Disable	Enable								
<p>Make Busy Via DTR. Determines if the modem goes off-hook when DTR is Off. Enable this setting if the DTE normally keeps DTR ON and turns DTR Off when the DTE cannot accept a call.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option should only be used when the modem is located behind a user's Private Branch Exchange (PBX). For 3811 modems, the MakeBusy Network Interface Modules (NIMs) must be installed on the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. Refer to the <i>COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual</i>.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S69 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Disable and 1 for Enable.</p>										
DTR Auto Redial										
Nxt	Dir 1	Dirs 1-2	Dirs 1-3	Dirs 1-4	Dirs 1-5	Dirs 1-6	Dirs 1-7	Dirs 1-8	Dirs 1-9	Dirs 1-10
<p>DTR Auto Redial. Defines the number of directory locations the modem may access when prior dialing attempts fail. For example, the selection Dirs1-10 means that all ten directory locations may be tied. The default is directory location 1 only.</p> <p>DTR Auto Redial represents the same internal setting as that accessed with the Auto Redial configuration option in the Leased-Line group. However, DTR Auto Redial is in effect (and can be accessed) only if the DTE Dialer Type is DTR=Dirs.</p> <p>Dir 1 The modem will use only Directory Location 1 for automatic dial backups.</p> <p>Dirs 1-2 The modem will use Directory Location 2 in the event of call failure using Directory Location 1.</p> <p>Dirs 1-3 The modem will use Directory Location 3 in the event of call failure using the preceding entries.</p> <p>• • •</p> <p>• • •</p> <p>Dirs 1-10 The modem will use Directory Location 10 in the event of call failure using the preceding entries.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S37 = <i>n</i>:</p> <p>S37 = 0 Use Directory Location 1</p> <p>S37 = 1 Use Directory Locations 1–2</p> <p>S37 = 2 Use Directory Locations 1–3</p> <p>S37 = 3 Use Directory Locations 1–4</p> <p>• • •</p> <p>• • •</p> <p>S37 = 9 Use Directory Locations 1–10</p>										

Table 9-3
(6 of 6)
Line Dialer Configuration Options

MI/MIC Dialing: Disable		
End	Disable	Enable
<p>MI/MIC Dialing. Also known as D-Lead signaling, is required by some PBX systems, older data phones, and security callback systems. It forces the modem into the originate handshake after first dialing a call.</p> <p>Disable – Modem ignores activity on the MI/MIC contacts.</p> <p>Enable – When Pins 3 and 6 of the TELCO jack (Models 3810 and 3820) are connected then disconnected, the modem goes off-hook and looks for the answer sequence from the remote modem. If the sequence is detected, the local modem will handshake and connect with the remote modem. A 26-pin D-Lead control connector is located on the rear of the 3000 Series Carrier. This connector is used for MI/MIC Dialing for Model 3811 modems.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S83 = n, where n is 0 for Disable and 1 for Enable.</p>		

Dial Line

The Dial Line configuration options are used to configure the modem for operation over dial lines.

Table 9-4 shows each Dial Line configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

Table 9-4
(1 of 3)
Dial Line Configuration Options

Dial LineRate: 19200(V32t)
Nxt 19200(V32t) 16800(V32t) 14400(V32b) 12000(V32b) 9600(V32b) 7200(V32b) 4800(V32b) 2400(V22bis) 1200(V22) 1200(212A) 0-300(V21) 0-300(103J)

Dial Line Rate. This configuration option determines the modem's data rate and modulation scheme for operation on dial lines. Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs.

19200(V32t), 16800(V32t), 14400(V32b), 12000(V32b), 9600(V32b), 7200(V32b), 4800(V32b) – The modem operates using V.32terbo, V.32bis, or V.32 modulation at the data rate selected. The modem can be forced by the remote modem to a lower data rate.

2400(V22bis), 1200 (V22), 1200(212A) – Modem operates using the modulation and data rate selected.

0-300(V21), 0-300(103J) – Modem operates in full-duplex, Asynchronous mode. These data rates do not support V.42 or MNP™ error control.

The factory default is 19200(V32t).

AT command for Dial Line Rate is S-register S41 = n, where n is:

1 = 14,400 (V.32bis)	7 = 1200 (V.22)
2 = 12,000 (V.32bis)	8 = 1200 (212A)
3 = 9600 (V.32bis/V.32)	10 = 0-300 (V21)
4 = 7200 (V.32bis)	11 = 0-300 (103J)
5 = 4800 (V.32bis/V.32)	20 = 19,200 (V.32terbo; default)
6 = 2400 (V.22bis)	21 = 16,800 (V.32terbo)

V32bis Automode: Enable
Nxt Enable Disable System 85

Enable – The modem automatically adapts to the modulation scheme and line rate of the remote modem. However, the maximum data rate the modem uses is determined by the Dial Line Rate configuration option. Bell 103J protocol is used for data rates of 0-300 bps.

Disable – Connection fails if the remote modem does not support the selected modulation.

System 85 – Modifies parameters used by the connection process. Specify System 85 only if your modem is in a modem pool attached to a System 85 Private Branch Exchange (PBX).

The factory default is Enable.

AT command is S-register S78 = n, where n is 0 for Enable, 1 for Disable, or 2 for System 85.

Table 9-4
(2 of 3)
Dial Line Configuration Options

V32bis Autorate: Enable Nxt Enable Disable StartAt48 StartAt96															
<p>Enable – Once connected, the modem automatically lowers the line rate if line conditions become impaired. When line conditions improve, the modem automatically shifts up to the highest data rate the line can support. This autorating only occurs between 14,400 bps and 4800 bps during V.32/V.32bis connections.</p> <p>Disable – Line rate does not vary.</p> <p>StartAt48, StartAt96 – Useful for lines with known noise problems, these settings cause the modem to connect at 4,800 bps (StartAt48) or 9,600 bps (StartAt96). If line conditions warrant it, the modem shifts up to the next higher rate until 14,400 bps or the highest possible rate for the line is reached.</p> <p>The factory default is Enable.</p> <p>AT command for V.32bis Autorate is S-register S76 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Enable, 1 for Disable, 2 for StartAt48, and 3 for StartAt96.</p>															
Dial TX Level: Permissv(–9) Nxt Permissv(–9) Programmable –10 dBm –11 dBm –12 dBm –13 dBm –14 dBm –15 dBm –16 dBm –17 dBm –18 dBm –19 dBm –20 dBm –21 dBm –22 dBm –23 dBm –24 dBm –25 dBm –26 dBm –27 dBm –28 dBm –29 dBm –30 dBm –31 dBm –32 dBm ETC 1.0_Cell ETC 1.1_Cell															
<p>Dial Transmit Level. Sets the power output level of the transmit signal over dial lines.</p> <p>Permissive (–9 dBm) – The modem transmits data at approximately –9 dBm. This is true whether the modem is connected to an RJ11-type permissive jack or to an RJ41 or RJ45 programmable jack.</p> <p>Programmable – The modem transmits at a predetermined level set by programming a resistor in the RJ41 or RJ45 jack. The program resistor value is only read upon power-up or after reset.</p> <p>ETC 1.0_Cell – Transmit level is automatically adjusted in response to line conditions according to the proprietary Enhanced Throughput Cellular 1.0 specification. Use only with remote modems set to ETC 1.0_Cell, and limit the data rate to 4800 bps.</p> <p>ETC 1.1_Cell – Transmit level is automatically adjusted in response to line conditions according to the proprietary Enhanced Throughput Cellular 1.1 specification.</p> <p>The factory default is Permissv(–9).</p> <p>AT command for Permissive mode is &J0. AT command for Programmable mode is &J1. AT commands for –10 through –32 dBm are &I10 through &I32. AT command for ETC 1.0_Cell is &I99. AT command for ETC 1.1_Cell is &I100.</p>															
V22b Guard Tone: Disable Nxt Disable 550Hz 1800Hz															
<p>V.22bis Guard Tone. Determines whether the V.22bis guard tone is disabled, set to 550 Hz, or set to 1800 Hz.</p> <p>Disable – No guard tone.</p> <p>550 Hz or 1800 Hz – When the modem is in Answer mode, it transmits the guard tone at this frequency.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command to disable is &G0. AT command for 550 Hz is &G1. AT command for 1800 Hz is &G2.</p>															

Table 9-4
(3 of 3)
Dial Line Configuration Options

V32bis Train: Long Nxt Long Short
<p>V.32bis Train. Controls V.32bis and V.32 train. Determines whether minimum or maximum time durations are used during the V.32bis/V.32 handshaking sequence for both dial and 4-wire/2-wire leased line applications.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option only appears when the Dial Line Rate configuration option is set for Auto:148-3 or any fixed V.32bis data rate.</p> <p>Long – Selects long train. Use this setting whenever far-end frequency offset (phase roll) may be encountered. This is usually only required when transmitting over satellite links.</p> <p>Short – Allows the modem to train-up faster when using V.32bis/V.32 modulation.</p> <p>The factory default is Long.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S43 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Long and 1 for Short.</p>
FallFwdDelay: Disable End Disable 5_mins 15_mins 1_hour
<p>Fall Forward Delay. Provides an initial delay before leased or dial lines are monitored for fall forward conditions. After the timer expires, monitoring occurs as usual. Possible delay times are 5 minutes, 15 minutes, or 1 hour.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable (no delay).</p> <p>NOTE: Fall Forward Delay appears under both the Dial Line configuration options and the Leased Line configuration options, but the same setting is used for both. Changing it in one place effectively changes it in the other.</p> <p>There is no analogous AT command, so this option is not available for modems without a shared or integral DCP.</p>

Leased Line

The Leased Line configuration options are used to configure the modem for operation over leased lines.

The Leased Line configuration group only appears if the modem is configured with the Sync Leased factory preset template, or when the &L1, &L2, &L3, or &L4 command is issued.

Table 9-5 shows each Leased Line configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

Table 9-5
(1 of 5)
Leased Line Configuration Options

Leased Mode: 4WLL-Orig															
Nxt	4WLL-Orig	4WLL-Ans	2WLL-Orig	2WLL-Ans											
<p>Leased Mode. Sets the modem for either 2-wire or 4-wire operation in Answer mode (receiving a call) or 2-wire or 4-wire operation in Originate (initiating a call) mode. The only options available for Model 3820 modems are 2WLLOrig and 2WLL-Ans.</p> <p>NOTE: For proper operation over leased lines, one modem must be set for Originate mode and the other set for Answer mode.</p> <p>For Sync Leased Answer Mode, 4-wire Answer is the factory default. (Two-wire Answer for the Model 3820.) For Sync Leased Originate Mode, 4-wire Originate is the factory default. (Two-wire Originate for the Model 3820.)</p> <p>AT command for Disable is &L0. AT command for 2-wire Originate is &L1. AT command for 4-wire Originate is &L2. AT command for 2-wire Answer is &L3. AT command for 4-wire Answer is &L4.</p>															
LeasedLine Rate: 14400(V32b)															
Nxt	19200(V32t)	16800(V32t)	14400(V32b)	12000(V32b)	9600(V32b)	7200(V32b)	4800(V32b) 2400(V22bis)								
<p>Leased-Line Rate. Determines the modem's data rate and modulation scheme for operation on leased lines.</p> <p>19200(V.32t), 16800(V32t), 14400(V.32bis), 12000(V.32bis), 9600(V.32bis), 7200(V.32bis), 4800(V.32bis) – These modulation schemes are available on 2-wire or 4-wire leased lines. If a fixed V.32bis rate is selected, the modem can still be commanded to fall back by a remote modem.</p> <p>NOTE: The modem must be in Direct mode before the modulation scheme can be changed from V.32bis to another leased-line modulation (V.33 or V.22bis). See Err Contrl Mode configuration option for more about Direct mode. On leased lines, V.42 error control and Buffer mode are only supported by V.32bis. An error occurs if the modem is not in Direct mode when the modulation is changed from V.32bis. In asynchronous mode using V.22bis, the DTE rate must equal the leased-line rate.</p> <p>2400(V.22bis) – This modulation scheme is available on 2-wire and 4-wire leased lines.</p> <p>NOTE: It is recommended that both modems use the same fixed data rate.</p> <p>The factory default is 19200(V32t).</p> <p>AT command is S-register S44 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is:</p> <table><tr><td>0, 1 = 14,400 bps (V.32bis)</td><td>5 = 4800 bps (V.32bis)</td></tr><tr><td>2 = 12,000 bps (V.32bis)</td><td>6 = 2400 bps (V.22bis)</td></tr><tr><td>3 = 9600 bps (V.32bis)</td><td>18 = 19,200 (V.32terbo; default)</td></tr><tr><td>4 = 7200 bps (V.32bis)</td><td>19 = 16,800 (V.32terbo)</td></tr></table>								0, 1 = 14,400 bps (V.32bis)	5 = 4800 bps (V.32bis)	2 = 12,000 bps (V.32bis)	6 = 2400 bps (V.22bis)	3 = 9600 bps (V.32bis)	18 = 19,200 (V.32terbo; default)	4 = 7200 bps (V.32bis)	19 = 16,800 (V.32terbo)
0, 1 = 14,400 bps (V.32bis)	5 = 4800 bps (V.32bis)														
2 = 12,000 bps (V.32bis)	6 = 2400 bps (V.22bis)														
3 = 9600 bps (V.32bis)	18 = 19,200 (V.32terbo; default)														
4 = 7200 bps (V.32bis)	19 = 16,800 (V.32terbo)														

Table 9-5
(2 of 5)
Leased Line Configuration Options

V32bis Autorate: Enable Nxt Enable Disable															
<p>V.32bis Autorate. Once connected, the modem automatically lowers the line rate if line conditions become impaired. When line conditions improve, the modem automatically shifts up to the highest data rate the line can support. This autorating only occurs between 14,400 bps and 4800 bps during V.32/V.32bis connections.</p> <p>The factory default is Enable.</p> <p>AT command for V.32bis Autorate is S-register S82 = n where n is 0 for Enable and 1 for Disable.</p>															
Leased TX Level: 0 Nxt 0 -1 -2 -3 -4 -5 -6 -7 -8 -9 -10 -11 -12 -13 -14 -15															
<p>Leased Transmit Level. Selects the modem's transmit power level over leased lines. The transmit output level can be selected in 1 dBm decrements from 0 dBm to -15 dBm.</p> <p>The factory default is 0 dBm.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S45 = n, where n is a value from 0 to 15 corresponding from 0 dBm to -15 dBm.</p>															
1800HzTrainTone: Disable Nxt Disable Enable															
<p>1800 Hz Training Tone. This configuration option is for communicating with certain modems that do not comply with the V.32 standard. When 1800 Hz Training Tone is enabled, a short burst of 1800 Hz (AC) tone is sent to the answering modem to prompt it to answer. This is not required for V.32-compliant modems.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S34 = n, where n is 0 for Disable and 1 for Enable.</p>															

Table 9-5
(3 of 5)
Leased Line Configuration Options

BdLn Auto Orig: Disable

Nxt **Disable** **Enable** **FastBackup** **2_min** **5_min** **10_min**

Bad Lines Auto Originate. Allows the modem to dial the number stored in directory location 1 to restore communications with the remote modem when the leased lines fail.

This configuration option must be enabled in both the local and remote modem. The Answer mode modem must have its Auto-Answer Ring Number configuration option enabled. Refer to the Line Dialer configuration option group for information regarding Auto-Answer.

Disable – The modem will not perform a Bad Lines Auto Originate.

Enable – The modem will originate a call after 30 seconds of continuous bad-line conditions.

FastBackup – The modem will originate a call after 20 seconds of continuous bad-line conditions.

2_min – The modem will originate a call after 2 minutes of continuous bad-line conditions.

5_min – The modem will originate a call after 5 minutes of continuous bad-line conditions.

10_min – The modem will originate a call after 10 minutes of continuous bad-line conditions.

This configuration option is not available on the Model 3820.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command is S-register S46 = *n*:

S46 = 0	Disable
S46 = 1	30 Seconds
S46 = 2	20 Seconds
S46 = 3	60 Seconds
S46 = 4	90 Seconds
S46 = 5	120 Seconds
•	•
•	•
S46 = 21	600 Seconds

Note that the effect of S46 = 2 is out of sequence with the other values.

Table 9-5
(4 of 5)
Leased Line Configuration Options

Rate Auto Orig: Disable																														
Nxt	Disable	OnFIBkTo48	OnFIBkTo72	OnFIBkTo96	OnFIBkTo120	OnFIBkTo144	OnFIBkTo168																							
<p>Rate Auto Originate. Initiates a dial backup call, using the phone number in directory location 1, when the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to or below a certain speed.</p> <p>Disable – The modem will not perform a Rate Auto Originate.</p> <p>OnFIBkTo48 – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 4800 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated.</p> <p>OnFIBkTo72 – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 7200 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated.</p> <p>OnFIBkTo96 – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 9600 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated.</p> <p>OnFIBkTo120 – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 12,000 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated.</p> <p>OnFIBkTo144 – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 14,400 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated. This is available only on modems with the V.32<i>terbo</i> feature.</p> <p>OnFIBkTo168 – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 16,800 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated. This is available only on modems with the V.32<i>terbo</i> feature.</p> <p>AT command is S36 = <i>n</i>:</p> <table><tr><td>S36 = 0</td><td>Disable</td></tr><tr><td>S36 = 1</td><td>OnFIBkTo48</td></tr><tr><td>S36 = 2</td><td>OnFIBkTo72</td></tr><tr><td>S36 = 3</td><td>OnFIBkTo96</td></tr><tr><td>S36 = 4</td><td>OnFIBkTo120</td></tr><tr><td>S36 = 5</td><td>OnFIBkTo144</td></tr><tr><td>S36 = 6</td><td>OnFIBkTo168</td></tr></table> <p>NOTE: Rate Auto-Originate is valid only when V.32bis Autorate is enabled (S76 = 0).</p>											S36 = 0	Disable	S36 = 1	OnFIBkTo48	S36 = 2	OnFIBkTo72	S36 = 3	OnFIBkTo96	S36 = 4	OnFIBkTo120	S36 = 5	OnFIBkTo144	S36 = 6	OnFIBkTo168						
S36 = 0	Disable																													
S36 = 1	OnFIBkTo48																													
S36 = 2	OnFIBkTo72																													
S36 = 3	OnFIBkTo96																													
S36 = 4	OnFIBkTo120																													
S36 = 5	OnFIBkTo144																													
S36 = 6	OnFIBkTo168																													
Auto Redial																														
Nxt	Dir_1	Dirs_1-2	Dirs_1-3	Dirs_1-4	Dirs_1-5	Dirs_1-6	Dirs_1-7	Dirs_1-8	Dirs_1-9	Dirs_1-10																				
<p>Auto Redial. Works in conjunction with the Bad Lines Auto Originate and Rate Auto Originate options. It allows repeated automatic dial backup attempts by specifying the range of Directory Locations that can be tried. The modem must be in Originate mode.</p> <p>Dir_1 – The modem will use only Directory Location 1 for automatic dial backups.</p> <p>Dirs_1-2 – The modem will use Directory Location 2 in the event of call failure using Directory Location 1.</p> <p>Dirs_1-3 – The modem will use Directory Location 3 in the event of call failure using the preceding entries.</p> <table><tr><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>•</td></tr><tr><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>•</td></tr></table> <p>Dirs_1-10 – The modem will use Directory Location 10 in the event of call failure using the preceding entries.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S35 = <i>n</i>:</p> <table><tr><td>S35 = 0</td><td>Use Directory Location 1</td></tr><tr><td>S35 = 1</td><td>Use Directory Locations 1–2</td></tr><tr><td>S35 = 2</td><td>Use Directory Locations 1–3</td></tr><tr><td>S35 = 3</td><td>Use Directory Locations 1–4</td></tr><tr><td>•</td><td>•</td></tr><tr><td>•</td><td>•</td></tr><tr><td>S35 = 9</td><td>Use Directory Locations 1–10</td></tr></table>											•	•	•	•	•	•	S35 = 0	Use Directory Location 1	S35 = 1	Use Directory Locations 1–2	S35 = 2	Use Directory Locations 1–3	S35 = 3	Use Directory Locations 1–4	•	•	•	•	S35 = 9	Use Directory Locations 1–10
•	•	•																												
•	•	•																												
S35 = 0	Use Directory Location 1																													
S35 = 1	Use Directory Locations 1–2																													
S35 = 2	Use Directory Locations 1–3																													
S35 = 3	Use Directory Locations 1–4																													
•	•																													
•	•																													
S35 = 9	Use Directory Locations 1–10																													

Table 9-5
(5 of 5)
Leased Line Configuration Options

AutoDialStandby: Disable																												
Nxt	Disable	15min	30min	1hr	4hr	Test(2min)	Adv15min	Adv30min	Adv1hr	AdvTest2min																		
<p>Automatic Dial Standby. Permits a modem operating on dial lines (regardless of the method of dialing origination) to check the quality of the leased lines periodically and, if they are good, to disconnect from the dial lines and resume operations on the leased lines.</p> <p>This configuration option is not available on the Model 3820.</p> <p>The time interval that the modem uses to check the quality of the leased lines is determined by the configuration option. These intervals are 15 minutes, 1 hour, and 4 hours.</p> <p>The normal settings cause a lapse of data flow on the dial line while the leased-line connection is checked. The Advanced settings allow data flow to continue without interruption while the leased line is evaluated. If Advanced settings are used, then both modems must be configured to the same Advanced setting.</p> <p>The Test(2min) selections are for testing this feature only.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S47 = <i>n</i>:</p> <table><tr><td>S47 = 0</td><td>Disable</td></tr><tr><td>S47 = 1</td><td>15min</td></tr><tr><td>S47 = 2</td><td>1hr</td></tr><tr><td>S47 = 3</td><td>4hrs</td></tr><tr><td>S47 = 4</td><td>Test(2min)</td></tr><tr><td>S47 = 5</td><td>Advanced 15min</td></tr><tr><td>S47 = 6</td><td>Advanced 1hr</td></tr><tr><td>S47 = 7</td><td>Advanced 4hrs</td></tr><tr><td>S47 = 8</td><td>Advanced Test(2min)</td></tr></table>											S47 = 0	Disable	S47 = 1	15min	S47 = 2	1hr	S47 = 3	4hrs	S47 = 4	Test(2min)	S47 = 5	Advanced 15min	S47 = 6	Advanced 1hr	S47 = 7	Advanced 4hrs	S47 = 8	Advanced Test(2min)
S47 = 0	Disable																											
S47 = 1	15min																											
S47 = 2	1hr																											
S47 = 3	4hrs																											
S47 = 4	Test(2min)																											
S47 = 5	Advanced 15min																											
S47 = 6	Advanced 1hr																											
S47 = 7	Advanced 4hrs																											
S47 = 8	Advanced Test(2min)																											
CarrierOn Level: -43dbm																												
Nxt	-43dbm	-26dbm																										
<p>Carrier On Level. This configuration option controls the carrier detection threshold for leased lines. When the power level of the receive carrier signal drops 2 dBm below this level (either -26 dBm or -43 dBm), LSD turns Off. When the carrier signal is greater than this level, LSD turns ON.</p> <p>The factory default is -43dbm.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S48 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for -43 dBm or 1 for -26 dBm.</p>																												
FallFwdDelay: Disable																												
End	Disable	5_mins	15_mins	1_hour																								
<p>Fall Forward Delay. Provides an initial delay before leased or dial lines are monitored for fall forward conditions. After the timer expires, monitoring occurs as usual. Possible delay times are 5 minutes, 15 minutes, or 1 hour.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable (no delay).</p> <p>NOTE: Fall Forward Delay appears under both the Dial Line configuration options and the Leased Line configuration options, but the same setting is used for both. Changing it in one place effectively changes it in the other.</p> <p>There is no analogous AT command, so this configuration option is not available for modems without a shared or integral DCP.</p>																												

V.42/MNP/Buffer

V.42/MNP/Buffer configuration options determine the type of error correction and flow control used by the modems and attached DTEs.

Some choices within this group may not appear depending upon how previous configuration options have been selected. If the Async/Sync Mode configuration option is set for synchronous operation (see DTE Interface configuration options group), then the V.42/MNP/Buffer group does not appear on the LCD. Any changes made to configuration options within this group only take effect after a disconnect.

Table 9-6 shows each V.42/MNP/Buffer configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

Table 9-6
(1 of 6)
V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options

*Err Contrl Mode: V42/MNPorBfr
Nxt V42/MNPorBfr V42/MNPorDsc MNP_or_Bufr MNP_or_Disc Buffer ModeDirectMode
LAPM_or_Disc LAPM_or_Bufr
<p>Determines the type of error control used by the modem. In most cases, V42/MNPorBfr is the best choice. If V.42bis and MNP are enabled, then the modem uses the following priority for error control negotiation: V.42bis, V.42, MNP 5 and below. Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs.</p> <p>V.42/MNP or Buffer – Modem attempts to connect in V.42 Error Control mode. If this fails, the modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem connects in Buffer mode and continues operation. This is also known as V42/MNP Autoreliable Mode.</p> <p>V.42/MNP or Disconnect – Modem attempts to connect in V.42 Error Control mode. If this fails, the modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem disconnects. This is also known as Reliable mode.</p> <p>MNP or Buffer – Modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem connects in Buffer mode. This is also known as MNP Autoreliable Mode.</p> <p>MNP or Disconnect – Modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem disconnects. This is also known as Reliable mode.</p> <p>Buffer Mode – Modem does not use error control and allows the DTE rate to differ from the communications line rate. This mode should only be used if the DTE provides its own error control or if errors in data can be tolerated. This setting is also known as Normal mode and is valid even if the remote modem is set for Direct mode.</p>
<p>*This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.</p>

**Table 9-6
(2 of 6)
V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options**

*Err Contrl Mode (cont.)
<p>Direct Mode – Modem connects at a data rate equal to or less than the initial DTE interface rate. (The modem never connects at a data rate greater than the initial DTE rate.) If the modem connects at a data rate lower than the DTE rate, the DTE must then adjust its data rate to equal the modem rate. Ultimately, the modem speed and DTE speed must be the same. Direct mode does not support error control or data buffering.</p> <p>LAPM or Disconnect – Modem attempts to connect in V.42 Link Access Procedure for Modems (LAPM) error control mode. If this fails, the modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem disconnects. This setting should be used for cellular connections (at both the mobile and PSTN sides) when it is known that both sides support V.42.</p> <p>LAPM or Buffer – Modem attempts to connect in V.42 LAPM error control mode. If this fails, the modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem connects in Buffer mode and continues operation.</p> <p>NOTE: The modem must be reconfigured for Direct mode before changing the leased-line modulation if V.42 error control or Buffer mode are enabled with V.32bis on leased lines.</p> <p>For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, V42/MNPorBfr is the factory default. For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, DirectMode is the factory default.</p> <p>AT command for Buffer Mode is \N0. AT command for Direct Mode is \N1. AT command for MNP or Disconnect is \N2. AT command for MNP or Buffer is \N3. AT command for V42/MNP or Disconnect is \N4. AT command for V42/MNP or Buffer is \N5. AT Command for LAPM or Disconnect is \N6. AT Command for LAPM or Buffer is \N7.</p>
*V42bis Compress: Enable Nxt Enable Disable
<p>V.42bis Compression. Enables or disables V.42bis data compression.</p> <p>Enable – Data compression operates in both the transmit and receive directions. This is the recommended setting for all applications.</p> <p>Disable – V.42bis data compression is disabled. This is rarely needed because V.42bis data compression does not cause data expansion for compressed data.</p> <p>The factory default is Enable.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is only available if Error Control Mode configuration option is set for V42/MNPorBfr or V42/MNPorDsc.</p> <p>AT command for Disable is "H0. AT commands for Enable are "H1, "H2, or "H3.</p>
*MNP5 Compress: Enable Nxt Enable Disable
<p>MNP5 Compression. Determines if the modem uses MNP Class 5 data compression. It can be set independently of V.42bis data compression. Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs.</p> <p>The factory default is Enable.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is only available if Error Control Mode configuration option is set for V42/MNPorBfr, V42/MNPorDsc, MNP or Buffr, or MNP or Disc.</p> <p>AT command for Disable is %C0. AT command for Enable is %C1.</p>
<p>* This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.</p>

Table 9-6
(3 of 6)
V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options

<p>*EC Negotiat Bfr: Disable Nxt Disable Enable Disab&Switch</p> <p>Error Control Negotiate Buffer. Determines if the answering modem buffers the data that it received from the remote modem during an interval in which the modem attempts to establish a connection using error control. Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs.</p> <p>Disable – Data is not buffered during the link negotiating (handshaking) sequence.</p> <p>Enable – Data is buffered while the link is being established. Initialization data is not passed on the DTE during the handshaking sequence.</p> <p>Disable and Switch – Data is not buffered during the handshaking sequence. However, when the modem receives an error control fallback character, it switches to Buffer mode. (See EC Fallback Char configuration option.)</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command for Disable is \C0. AT command for Enable is \C1. AT command for Disab&Switch is \C2.</p>
<p>*EC Fallback Char: 013 ASCII Nxt ↑ 013 ASCII</p> <p>Error Control Fallback Character. This configuration option allows you to enter the ASCII value of the error control fallback character. This provides the remote modem with the ability to end the error control link negotiating (handshaking) sequence by sending this character. The modems will connect in Buffer mode (no error control). Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs.</p> <p>When the modem receives this fallback character it switches to Buffer mode and transmits an EC fallback character to the DTE. When comparing incoming characters for a match against the EC fallback character, the modem ignores parity.</p> <p>The factory default is 13 ASCII.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is only available if EC Negotiate Buffer is configured for Disab&Switch.</p> <p>AT command is %An, where <i>n</i> is a value from 0 to 127.</p>
<p>*Flw Cntl of DTE: CTS_to_DTE Nxt CTS_to_DTE Disable XON/XOFF</p> <p>Flow Control of DTE. Determines how the modem controls the flow of data from the DTE.</p> <p>CTS to DTE – Method of flow control in which the modem raises and lowers its CTS interface lead to indicate when the DTE should start and stop sending data.</p> <p>Disable – The modem cannot control the flow of data from the DTE.</p> <p>XON/XOFF – Method of flow control in which the modem sends XON and XOFF characters to the DTE to start and stop the flow of data.</p> <p>The factory default is CTS to DTE.</p> <p>AT commands for Disable are \Q0, \Q5, and \Q6. AT commands for XON/XOFF are \Q1 and \Q4. AT commands for CTS to DTE are \Q2 and \Q3.</p>
<p>* This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.</p>

Table 9-6
(4 of 6)
V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options

<p>*Flw Cntl of Mdm: Disable Nxt Disable XON/XOFF RTS_to_Mdm</p> <p>Flow Control of Modem. Determines how the DTE controls the flow of data from the modem.</p> <p>Disable – The DTE cannot control the flow of data from the modem.</p> <p>XON/XOFF – Method of flow control in which the modem starts and stops data flow based upon XON and XOFF characters received from the DTE.</p> <p>RTS to Modem – Method of flow control in which the modem respectively starts and stops data transmission based upon the ON and Off state of the DTE's RTS signal.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT commands for Disable are \Q0, \Q2, and \Q4. AT commands for XON/XOFF are \Q1 and \Q5. AT commands for CTS to DTE are \Q3 and \Q6.</p>
<p>*XON/XOFF Psthr: Disable Nxt Disable Enable</p> <p>XON/XOFF Passthrough. Considers an XON/XOFF character as data and passes it on to the remote modem. In this case, the DTE at one end of the communications link can send flow control characters to the other DTE. This is also known as DTE to DTE flow control.</p> <p>Disable – Flow control characters are processed but are not passed on to the remote modem.</p> <p>Enable – Flow control characters are processed and passed on to the remote modem.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is only available if the Flow Control configuration option is configured for XON/XOFF.</p> <p>AT command for Disable is \X0. AT command for Enable is \X1.</p>
<p>*Mdm/Mdm FlowCtl: Disable Nxt Disable Enable</p> <p>Modem-to-Modem Flow Control. If a modem's buffers begin to fill due to data it is receiving from the remote modem, but is not passing on to the DTE, it can issue XON/XOFF flow control characters to the remote modem. This only applies if Buffer (nonerror control) mode is selected. If Error Control mode is enabled, flow control between the modems will happen automatically, regardless of the setting of this option.</p> <p>Disable – Modem does not respond to XON and XOFF characters received over the VF line. Also, the modem will not transmit an XOFF character to the remote end if its receive buffers are full.</p> <p>Enable – Modem stops transmitting data to the remote modem if it receives an XOFF character over the VF line. An XON character will enable data transmission. Also, the modem will transmit an XOFF character to the remote end if its receive buffers are full. Select this setting if the DTE rate is less than the VF line rate or if the DTE must frequently stop the flow of data to process it.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is only available if Flow Control is configured for XON/XOFF.</p> <p>AT Command for Disable is \G0. AT Command for Enable is \G1.</p>
<p>*This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.</p>

Table 9-6
(5 of 6)
V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options

<p>*Break Buffr Ctl: Keep_Data Nxt Keep_Data Discard_Data</p> <p>Break Buffer Control. Determines if data stored in the modem's buffer is saved or discarded when the DTE issues a break sequence.</p> <p>Keep Data (Nondestructive mode) – Saves the data in the buffer in both the local and remote modems.</p> <p>Discard Data (Destructive mode) – Empties the data buffer. Only buffers in the same direction of travel as the break are discarded.</p> <p>The factory default is Keep Data.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is ignored if the Break Forces Escape configuration option (see DTE Dialer configuration options group) is enabled.</p> <p>AT commands for Discard Data are \K0 and \K1. AT commands for Keep Data are \K2, \K3, \K4, and \K5.</p>
<p>*Send Break Cntl: Data_First Nxt Data_First Break_First</p> <p>Send Break Control. Determines what is sent from the modem first, data or break if a break sequence is sent from the DTE.</p> <p>Data First (Nonexpedited) – A break is treated as a data character and is sent in the order it was received. This is also known as Nonexpedited mode.</p> <p>Break First (Expedited) – A break is sent before the data currently in the buffer. This is also known as Expedited mode.</p> <p>The factory default is Data First.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is ignored if the Break Forces Escape configuration option (see DTE Dialer configuration options group) is enabled.</p> <p>AT commands for Break First are \K0, \K1, \K2, and \K3. AT commands for Data First are \K4 and \K5.</p>
<p>*TXBuffDiscDelay: 10sec Nxt 10sec 60sec Disable</p> <p>The Transmit Buffer Disconnect Delay is the maximum amount of time the modem can continue to send data in its Transmit Buffer to the remote modem after it is commanded by the DTE to disconnect. Disable means that the disconnect occurs immediately. The default is 10 seconds.</p> <p>Disable – Modem disconnects immediately without attempting to send data stored in its buffers.</p> <p>10, 60 sec – Maximum amount of time the modem tries to empty its buffers before disconnecting. In both cases (10 sec and 60 sec), the modem disconnects much sooner if it can empty its buffers.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is not available if Error Control Mode configuration option is set for DirectMode.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S49 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Disable and any value from 1 to 255 in 1 second increments.</p>
<p>* This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.</p>

Table 9-6
(6 of 6)
V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options

<p>*RxBuffDiscDelay: Disable Nxt 0sec 60sec Disable</p> <p>Receive Buffer Disconnect Delay. Determines the maximum amount of time the modem can continue to send data in its Receive Buffer to the DTE after the modem is commanded by the DTE to disconnect, or after the modem detects a line disconnect. Through the DCP the available settings are Disable, 10sec, and 60sec; Disable means that the disconnect occurs immediately. The default is Disable.</p> <p>Disable – Modem disconnects immediately without attempting to send data stored in its buffers.</p> <p>10, 60 sec – Maximum amount of time the modem tries to empty its buffers before disconnecting. In both cases (10 sec and 60 sec), the modem disconnects much sooner if it can empty its buffers.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is not available if Error Control Mode configuration option is set for DirectMode.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S39 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Disable and any value from 1 to 255 in 1 second increments.</p>
<p>*Max Frame Size Nxt 256 192 128 64 32 16</p> <p>Sets the maximum frame size for V.42 and MNP. For V.42 operation, 128 is the maximum value, and a higher value has the effect of setting the frame size to 128. For MNP, 64 is the minimum value, and any lower value has the effect of setting the frame size to 64.</p> <p>For cellular applications, at least one of the modems should be set to 32.</p> <p>AT command is \A:</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">\A0 = 64 \A1 = 128 \A2 = 192 \A3 = 256 \A4 = 32 \A5 = 16</p>
<p>*CellularEnhance End Disable Enable</p> <p>Enables or disables V.42 Cellular Enhancement mode.</p> <p>Disable – The modem uses standard techniques for V.42 operation.</p> <p>Enable – Cellular enhancements are enabled. The modem is still compatible with modems that do not have cellular enhancements installed or enabled.</p> <p>AT commands are S91 = 0 for Disable and S91 = 1 for Enable.</p>
<p>*This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.</p>

Tests

The Tests configuration options determine specifics, such as the duration of a test, for the various diagnostic tests available to the modem.

Table 9-7 shows each Tests configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

Table 9-7
(1 of 2)
Test Configuration Options

DTE RL (CT140): Disable Nxt Disable Enable
<p>DTE Remote Loopback. Controls the use of Pin 21 of the EIA 232-D/CCITT V.24 interface by the DTE to initiate a remote loopback. An Abort command or test time-out ends this test.</p> <p>Enable – The DTE forces the modem into remote loopback when the signal on Pin 21 (CCITT 140) is turned ON. Remote Loop ends when the signal is dropped.</p> <p>Disable – The DTE does not initiate remote loopback in response to the signal on Pin 21.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S51 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Disable and 1 for Enable.</p>
DTE LL (CT141): Disable Nxt Disable Enable
<p>DTE Local Loopback. Controls the use of Pin 18 of the EIA-232-D/CCITT V.24 interface by the DTE to initiate a local loopback. An Abort command or test time-out ends this test.</p> <p>Enable – The DTE forces the modem into local loopback when the signal on Pin 18 (CCITT 141) is turned ON. Local loopback ends when the signal is dropped.</p> <p>Disable – The DTE will not initiate local loopback in response to the signal on Pin 18.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S52 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Disable and 1 for Enable.</p>
Test Timeout: Disable Nxt Disable 30sec 60sec 240sec
<p>Test Time-out. Determines how long a test runs before aborting.</p> <p>Disable – Allows a test to run indefinitely.</p> <p>30, 60, or 240 seconds – Allows the test to run for 30 seconds, 60 seconds, or 240 seconds.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S18 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Disable and 1 to 255 seconds.</p>
Rcv Remote Loop: Enable Nxt Enable Disable
<p>Receive Remote Loopback Response. Determines if the modem responds to a request for a remote loopback issued from a remote modem.</p> <p>The factory default is Enable.</p> <p>AT command for Enable is &T4.</p> <p>AT command for Disable is &T5.</p>

Table 9-7
(2 of 2)
Test Configuration Options

<p>V54 Address: Disable Nxt Disable (Address Values)</p> <p>V.54 Address. Determines which remote 3800 Series modem is placed into a remote loopback test. This can be either a remote digital loopback or local analog loopback. This type of addressing can be used for extended data circuits (tail circuits).</p> <p>Disable – This is used for normal point-to-point dial and leased-line networks.</p> <p>Address Values – 01, 03, 05, 07, 09, 0B, 0D, 0F, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 1B, 1D, 1F, 25, 27, 2B, 2D, 2F, 33, 35, 37, 3B, 3D, 3F, 55, 57, 5B, 5F, 6F, 77, or 7F. This configuration option selects the address of a modem that is to be placed into a loopback test. This configuration option is used for more complex networks where multiple modems, used in extended data circuits (tail circuits), can be commanded to loopback.</p> <p>CAUTION: Selecting an address will disable any remote loopback that can be commanded from a remote modem. The DTE must now control loopback via CT140 and supply the address.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT command for Disable is S-register S53 = 0. AT command for V.54 Address is S-register S53 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 1 to 34.</p>
<p>V54 Device Type: Peripheral End Peripheral Intermediate</p> <p>V.54 Device Type. Identifies where the modem is physically located in the network.</p> <p>Peripheral – The modem is located at the endpoint of the network and is not connected back-to-back with another modem.</p> <p>Intermediate – The modem is either of the two modems connected back-to-back.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is only available if V54 Address is enabled.</p> <p>The factory default is Peripheral.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S54 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Peripheral and 1 for Intermediate.</p>

Misc

The Miscellaneous configuration options determine specifics for various functions, including network management parameters and remote modem access.

Table 9-8 shows each Misc (Miscellaneous) configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

Table 9-8
(1 of 4)
Miscellaneous Configuration Options

StrapsWhenDisc: No_Change
Nxt No_Change Reload RelodNoATChg
<p>Straps When Disconnected. Determines whether or not configuration options in the Active (Saved) configuration area are reloaded to Active (Operating) when a disconnect occurs. This is useful in modem pooling applications.</p> <p>No Change – Configuration options do not change upon disconnect.</p> <p>Reload – The Active (Operating) configuration area, which controls modem operation, is reloaded from the Active (Saved) configuration area when a disconnect occurs. This is useful in modem pooling applications where it is desirable to start the modem from a known condition after every call. This allows multiple users to issue AT commands to change the modem's operation for their particular call.</p> <p>Reload, No AT Change – This has the same effect as Reload, except that it becomes impossible to change this configuration option with an AT command, and the command buffer is cleared so that AT+A (Repeat Last Command) has no effect.</p> <p>NOTE: If Reload or RelodNoATChg is selected, the following AT commands are disabled although the OK result code appears when these commands are issued:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> AT&F0. Loads Async Dial into Active(Operating) AT&F1. Loads Sync Dial into Active (Operating) AT&F2. Loads Sync Leased (Answer) into Active (Operating) AT&F3. Loads UNIX Dial into Active(Operating) AT&F4. Loads Sync Leased (Originate) into Active (Operating) AT&F5. Loads Cellular(Mobile) into Active (Operating) AT&F6. Loads Cellular (PSTN) into Active (Operating) AT&W0. Write Active(Operating) to Active(Saved) AT&W1. Write Active(Operating) to Customer 1 AT&W2. Write Active(Operating) to Customer 2 AT&Zn=x. Store directory numbers <p>The factory default is No_Change.</p> <p>AT command for No_Change is S88 = 0 or S88 = 231.</p> <p>AT command for Reload is S88 = 1 or S88 = 232.</p> <p>AT command for Reload with no AT Change is S88 = 2 or S88 = 233.</p>
Speaker Control: OnUntilCarr
NxtOn UntilCarr Off On
<p>Speaker Control. Determines if the speaker is Off, On until carrier signal is received by the modem, or On all the time.</p> <p>The factory default is OnUntilCarr.</p> <p>NOTE: Speaker Control can also be temporarily set using the Control branch; however, a reset or power cycle will restore the modem to the Speaker Control and Speaker Volume configuration option settings.</p> <p>AT command for Off is M0 AT command for On Until CD is M1.</p> <p>AT command for On is M2.</p>

Table 9-8
(2 of 4)
Miscellaneous Configuration Options

Speaker Volume: Medium Nxt Medium Low High
<p>Speaker Volume. Controls the level of speaker volume.</p> <p>The factory default is Medium.</p> <p>NOTE: Speaker Volume can also be temporarily set using the Control branch; however, a reset or power cycle will restore the modem to the Speaker Control and Speaker Volume configuration option settings.</p> <p>AT command for Low is L0 or L1. AT command for Medium is L2. AT command for High is L3.</p>
Access frm Remt: Enable Nxt Enable Disable
<p>Access from Remote. Determines if your modem's DCP can be accessed by a remote modem via the VF line.</p> <p>CAUTION: If this configuration option is disabled, the modem cannot be accessed by another modem.</p> <p>Enable – Allows access from a remote modem.</p> <p>Disable – Does not allow access from a remote modem.</p> <p>The factory default is Enable.</p> <p>NOTE: The remote modem must be a 3800 Series modem.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S55 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is 0 for Enable and 1 for Disable.</p>
RemAccssPasswrd: 00000000 Nxt ↑ 00000000
<p>Remote Access Password. Allows the entry of a password for establishing control of a remote modem from the DCP of a local modem. The same password must be used in both the local and remote modem.</p> <p>CAUTION: A remote access password should be selected for security purposes.</p> <p>NOTE: If the Access from Remote configuration option is set to Disable, the password has no effect.</p> <p>AT command equivalent is S-registers S56 = <i>w</i>, S57 = <i>x</i>, S58 = <i>y</i>, and S59 = <i>z</i>, where <i>w</i> is the leftmost pair of digits, <i>x</i> is the second pair of digits, <i>y</i> is the third pair of digits, and <i>z</i> is rightmost pair (or fourth) pair of digits. For example, if the remote access password is 12345678, then the value for S56 is 1 and 2, and the value for S59 is 7 and 8.</p>
Dir#1_Callback: Disable Nxt Disable Enable
<p>Directory Location 1 Callback. This configuration option controls whether or not the modem's single number callback function is used.</p> <p>Disable – Modem does not use the single number callback function.</p> <p>Enable – Modem answers a call, disconnects, and dials the number stored in directory location 1.</p> <p>NOTE: This function is disabled if dial access security is enabled.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p> <p>AT Command to Disable is S-register S67 = 0. AT Command to Enable is S-register S67 = 1.</p>

Table 9-8
(3 of 4)
Miscellaneous Configuration Options

<p>*NetMngmtAddress: 256 Nxt ↑ 256</p>
<p>Network Management Address. Determines the address used when accessing a locally attached modem from the 6700 Series NMS. This configuration option is ignored by remote modems.</p> <p>Address values range from 001 to 256.</p> <p>The factory default is 256.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S75 = <i>n</i>, where <i>n</i> is a value from 0 to 255 (001 to 256).</p>
<p>*NMS_Call_Msgs: CallCnct&Prg Nxt CallCnct&Prg Disable CallCnctOnly CallProgOnly</p>
<p>NMS Call Messages. Determines if modem status and/or call summary information is sent to the 6700 Series NMS. The modem can itemize status, such as CallProgress messages, or it can report a summary of activity, such as Call Connect messages, to the NMS.</p> <p>Call Connect & Progress – Enables both Call Connect and Call Progress information to be transmitted to the NMS.</p> <p>Disable – Modem status and call summary information is not sent to the NMS.</p> <p>Call Connect Only – The modem accumulates call statistics over a period of time and then transmits a summary of these statistics to the NMS. The NMS uses this data to produce utilization reports.</p> <p>Call Progress Only – The modem transmits detailed modem status information to the NMS. These messages include any events that can display on the LCD.</p> <p>The factory default is CallCnct&Prg.</p> <p>AT command is S-register S66 = <i>n</i> where <i>n</i> is 0 for Call Connect & Progress, 1 for Disable, 2 for Call Connect Only, and 3 for Call Progress Only.</p>
<p>NMS DTR Alarm: Disable Nxt Disable Enable</p>
<p>NMS DTR Alarm. Determines whether an NMS DTE alarm report is generated when DTR is off.</p> <p>Disable – The state of DTR does not cause an alarm condition to be reported.</p> <p>Enable – A DTE alarm condition is reported to the NMS controller in the Device Health & Status message if DTR is off for more than 10 seconds. The alarm condition is reported as inactive after DTR is on for 3 seconds.</p> <p>Factory templates do not set NMS DTR Alarm.</p> <p>AT Command to Disable is S-register S77 = 0. AT Command to Enable is S-register S77 = 1.</p>
<p>* This configuration option only appears if the 6700 Series NMS option is installed.</p>

Table 9-8
(4 of 4)
Miscellaneous Configuration Options

<p>*NetworkPosition: Tributary Nxt Tributary Control</p> <p>Network Position Identification. Each modem must be identified either as a control modem or a tributary modem.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option is only applicable for leased-line network management applications.</p> <p>For the Model 3810 and Model 3820, Tributary is the factory default.</p> <p>For the Model 3811, Control is the factory default.</p> <p>AT command for Tributary is S74 = 0. AT command for Control is S74 = 1.</p>
<p>CellulrRJ11Adpt: Disable End Disable Enable</p> <p>Cellular RJ11 Adapt. Allows the modem to support an RJ11 connection to a 3-watt phone. It also causes the modem to transmit the ETC 1.1 Calling Tone during call origination.</p> <p>Disable – No RJ11 support or ETC 1.1 Calling Tone.</p> <p>Enable – For use when the Cellular(Mobile) factory template is loaded, enable RJ11 support and ETC 1.1 Calling Tone.</p> <p>AT Command to Disable is S-register S93 = 0. AT Command to Enable is S-register S93 = 1.</p>
<p>* This configuration option only appears if the 6700 Series NMS option is installed.</p>

Security Configuration Options

The Security Configuration Options group allows you to view and set dial access security parameters. This group appears only if the dial access security feature has been installed.

Table 9-9 shows each Security configuration option as it appears on the LCD. The factory default value is shown after the colon (:) on the first line; all available selections are listed on the second line. After this, a description of the each selection follows. These configuration options do not have an equivalent AT command.

Table 9-9
(1 of 2)
Security Configuration Options

*EntryWait_Time: 20 sec Nxt 20 sec 10 sec 40 sec 60 sec
<p>Entry Wait Timeout. Determines how long the answering modem waits for the originating modem to enter a VF-side password and DTE-side password.</p> <p>This timer resets for each phase of access security. For example, if a VF-side password and a DTE-side password are required, then the user has 20 seconds per entry to input the correct password.</p> <p>The factory default is 20 seconds.</p>
VF_Prompt_Type: 2nd_DialTone Nxt 2nd_DialTone Quiet_Answer
<p>VF Prompt Type. Determines how the answering modem requests a valid password from the originating modem for the valid password. This configuration option is only used for VF-side password entry and is not valid for DTE-side password entry.</p> <p>NOTE: This configuration option only appears if the Answer Security Mode configuration option is configured for VF_&_DTE.</p> <p>2nd Dial Tone – Once the answering modem is off-hook, it generates a dial tone to the originating modem as a prompt for that modem's VF-side password. (Second dial tone is represented by a W in the dial command string.)</p> <p>Quiet Answer – Once the answering modem is off-hook, it does not send an answer tone to the originating modem. The originating modem enters its VF-side password after detecting a ring back signal followed by five seconds of silence. For this to work correctly, the Auto Answer Ring # configuration option in the answering modem must be set to 2 rings or greater. (Quiet answer is represented by an @ in the dial command string.)</p> <p>The factory default is 2nd_DialTone.</p>
*#DTE_PW_Tries: 1 Nxt 1 2 3 4 5
<p>Number of DTE Password Tries. Determines the number of attempts an originating user has to enter a valid DTE-side password. If the password entered does not match a value in the answering modem's Password Table, then the modem will issue the password prompt again (provided that the number of tries is set to a value greater than 1). This will continue until the correct password is entered by the originating user or the number of tries allowed is met.</p> <p>The factory default is 1.</p>
*DTE_PW_TermChar: 013 Nxt ↑ 013
<p>DTE Password Termination Character. Allows you to change the ASCII character used to indicate the end of a password or User ID entered by an originating user. This character can be set to any ASCII value from 0 to 127.</p> <p>The factory default is 13 (ASCII carriage return).</p>
<p>* This configuration option does not appear if the Answer Security Mode configuration option is configured for No Answer Security.</p>

Table 9-9
(2 of 2)
Security Configuration Options

*DTE_PW_BkSpChar: 008 Nxt ↑ 008
<p>DTE Password Backspace Character. Sets the character that is used to perform a backspace in security mode. This character can be set to any ASCII value from 0 to 127.</p> <p>The factory default is 08 (ASCII backspace).</p>
Get_User_ID: Disable Nxt Disable Enable
<p>Get User ID. Determines whether the remote user is prompted for an NMS-defined login ID once the modems have completed initial handshaking. For consistent operation from the remote user's viewpoint, all modems in a modem group must use the same setting.</p> <p>Disable – The user is prompted only for a password (if required by the setting of Answer Security Mode or the configuration of the VF-side password).</p> <p>Enable – The user is prompted for a login ID and then a password (if required by the setting of Answer Security Mode or the configuration of the VF-side password). NMS sends a disconnect command to the local modem if the login ID is invalid.</p> <p>The factory default is Disable.</p>
NMS_Reporting: 00 Nxt ↑ 00
<p>NMS Reporting. Determines whether and how dial access security events are reported to the NMS controller. The possible values, 00-15, represent a bit map. The bits are normally set using the NMS controller.</p> <p>The value of NMS_Reporting is not affected by loading a factory default template. The initial value when the modem is shipped is 00.</p>
Answer_Secur: No_Answ_Sec Nxt No_Answ_Sec DTE_Only VF_&_DTE VF_w/_DTE
<p>Answer Access Security Mode. This configuration option is read-only and cannot be changed from the Configure branch. The setting of this configuration option can only be changed in the Set Answer Sec group found in the Security branch.</p> <p>The settings of this configuration option determine the type of access security protection provided by the modem. It can be disabled using the No_Answ_Sec setting, or it can be enabled with the DTE_Only, VF_&_DTE, or VF_w/_DTE settings.</p>
Originate_Secur: No_OrigSec Nxt No_OrigSec Ena_Orig_Sec
<p>Originate Security Mode. This configuration option is read-only and cannot be changed from the Configure branch. The setting of this configuration option can only be changed in the Set Orig Sec group found in the Security branch.</p> <p>This configuration option enables or disables security protection used for outbound calls when using the AT command autodialer function.</p>
<p>* This configuration option does not appear if the Answer Security Mode configuration option is configured for No Answer Security.</p>

Control Branch 10

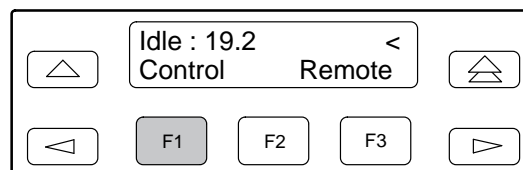
Overview	10-1
Control Branch	10-1
Speaker	10-2
Reset	10-2
Make Busy/Remove Make Busy	10-3
Service Line/Disconnect Service Line	10-3
DownLoad Code	10-4
Clone to Remote	10-4
To Local via DTE	10-6
Automatic Firmware Download	10-6
Download Failure	10-6

Overview

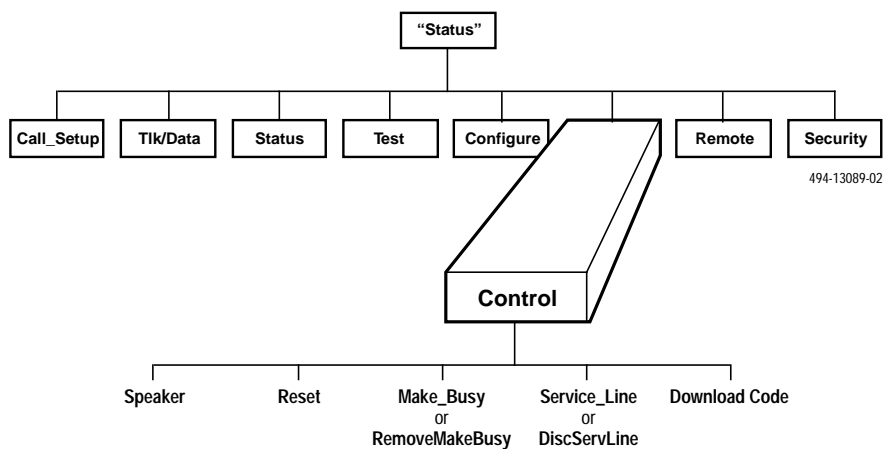
The Control branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to manage hardware and software functions, such as speaker volume, reset, busy out, and firmware download. The Model 3811 has the additional hardware function, Service Line.

Control Branch

To access Control from the Top-Level menu, make the following selections:



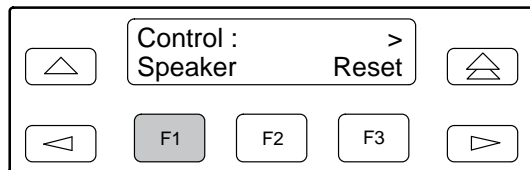
Press the \triangleright key until Control appears. Select Control.



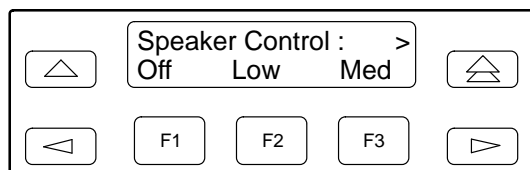
Speaker

Speaker allows you to make temporary adjustments to the modem's speaker volume. Upon a reset, speaker volume returns to its configured setting. For more information on speaker settings, refer to the *Misc* section in Chapter 9.

To access Speaker from the Control branch, make the following selections:



Select Speaker.



Press the \triangleright key and appropriate function keys to choose the desired selection.

DCP selections are

- Off** Turns the speaker off.
- Low** Adjusts speaker to low volume.
- Med** Adjusts speaker to medium volume.
- High** Adjusts speaker to high volume.

Command Complete appears on the LCD.

To exit Speaker and remain in the Control branch, press the \triangle key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the \triangleleft key.

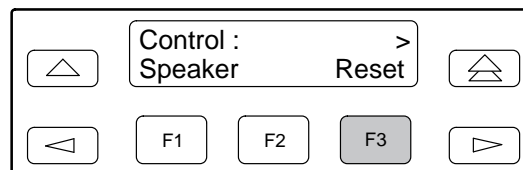
AT Command Equivalent

The AT commands for ON/Off are M0, M1, and M2. The AT commands for volume control are L0, L1, L2, and L3.

Reset

Reset causes the modem to stop operation and perform a complete program restart. The modem begins the power-up test sequence that ends with the Top-Level menu displayed on the LCD. Configuration options stored in an Active (Saved) configuration area are copied to the Active (Operating) configuration area.

To access Reset from the Control branch, make the following selection:



Select Reset.



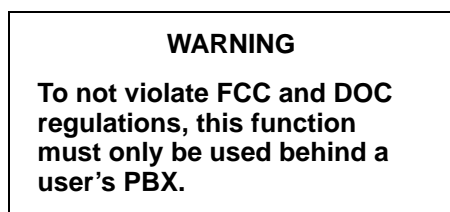
Reset appears before the modem performs the power-up diagnostic test sequence.

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command for Reset is Z.

Make Busy/Remove Make Busy

The Make Busy function forces the modem off-hook so it cannot answer a call. This is often used with PBX systems to permit the busy out of a PBX port for rotary or hunt groups.



To access Make Busy from the Control branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Make_Busy appears. Select Make_Busy.



The modem is now in a forced busy condition. **Command Complete** appears on the LCD.

To remove the modem from Make Busy mode, press the \triangleleft key once and the \triangleright key until Remove Make Busy appears.



Press any function key to select RemoveMakeBusy. The message **Command Complete** appears on the LCD.

AT Command Equivalent

The AT command for Remove Make Busy is H or H0. The AT command for Make Busy is H1.

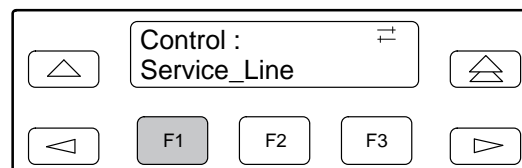
Service Line/Disconnect Service Line

The Service Line function allows you to switch a specific Model 3811 installed in a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier from normal dial or leased-line operation to service-line operation. This switch only places the modem on the service line. For a connection to be established, you must still use the normal dialing methods as described in Chapter 5, *Call Setup Branch*.

A service line is an extra dial line connected to a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. This line is normally shared by up to eight Model 3811 modems installed in either Slots 1–8 or Slots 9–16. However, by daisy chaining the service-line connector of one Network Interface Module (NIM) to the service line of another NIM installed in the same carrier, you can permit all 16 modems to share one service line. The service line can also be extended to other carriers in a cabinet. For more information regarding daisy chaining of modems to the service line, refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual*.

A service line is ideal for a dial backup of Model 3811 modems operating on leased lines. Remember that a service line can back up only one failed leased line at a time.

To enable service line from the Control branch, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Service_Line appears. Select Service_Line to switch the modem from its normal dial line to the service line. Now, when the modem places a call, instead of using the dial or leased line, the call is placed on the service line.

To disconnect the modem from the service line and resume normal operation, press the \triangleleft key once and the \triangleright key until Disc Serv Line appears.

Select Disc Serv Line. The call and service line disconnect and the message **Command Complete** appears on the LCD.

AT Command Equivalent

There is no AT Command Equivalent for Service Line.

Download Code

The Download Code function sets parameters within the modem when transferring firmware to a remote modem or when receiving firmware upgrades from a locally attached PC-based controller. The latter should only be performed by customer service personnel.

There are two selections under Download Code: Clone to Remote and To Local via DTE. Clone to Remote is used to transfer an exact copy of the firmware currently stored in a 3800 Series modem to another 3800 Series modem. For this to occur, the modem must be connected to the remote modem via a leased-line network or an established dial-line network. If these prerequisites do not exist, then this selection does not appear on the LCD.

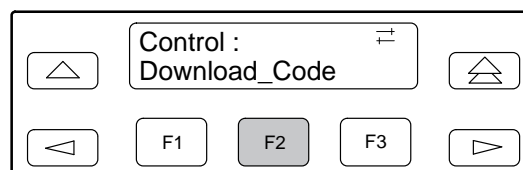
The second selection appearing on the LCD is To Local via DTE. This function permits firmware upgrades to be transferred to a 3800 Series modem. This type of download requires a locally attached PC-controller to be connected to the modem's DTE port as well as special download software. **Any downloads using this selection are intended to be performed by customer service personnel only.**

Clone To Remote

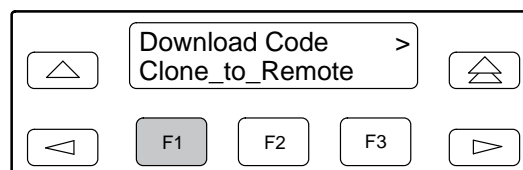
This function allows you to transfer an exact copy of the local modem's firmware to a remote modem. Before using Clone to Remote, perform the following:

- Make sure the 3800 Series modems have an established dial network connection using either V.32bis or V.32 modulation or a leased-line connection using either V.33, V.32bis, V.32, or V.29 modulation.
- Make sure the remote modem's Access From Remote configuration option is enabled.
- Make sure the password (Remote Access Password configuration option) is the same in both the local and remote modems. (For an example of how to change the password, refer to the *Editing and Saving a Configuration Option* section in Chapter 9.)

To access Download Code from the Control branch, make the following selections:



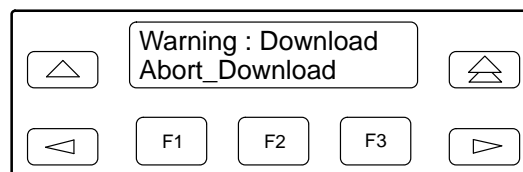
Press the \triangleright key until Download_Code appears. Press any function key to select Download_Code.



Press any function key to select Clone_to_Remote.

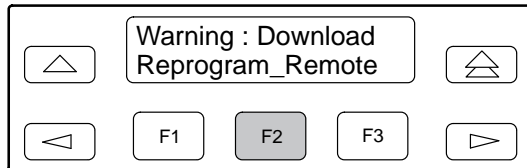
WARNING

The modem begins a transfer of its own program to the remote modem. This process takes the communications link out-of-service for several minutes depending upon the data rate of the link (14,400 bps = 10 minutes; 9600 bps = 15 minutes; 4800 bps = 30 minutes). If the Clone to Remote process is started and then interrupted, the remote modem is left in a partially programmed state in which its functional capabilities are limited to those required to initiate and complete another download attempt.

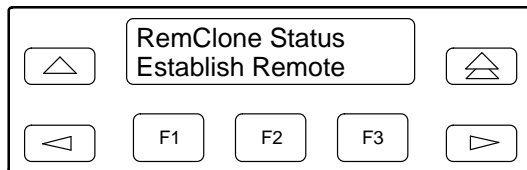


At this point, if you do not want to continue this process, abort the transfer by selecting any function key. This returns the modem to the Top-Level menu.

However, to continue with the transfer, press the \triangleright key to display the Reprogram_Remote selection.



Press any function key to begin the transfer.



The local modem's LCD displays **Establish Remote**, indicating the modem is attempting to establish a Remote Cloning Download session with the remote modem.

If unsuccessful, the modem remains in the Download Transfer mode. The LCD's top line displays **RemClone Failed** and the bottom line displays one of the following messages:

**Incompat
Modulat**

The modems are connected, but are using a modulation scheme other than V.33, V.32bis, V.32, or V.29.

No Response

The remote modem is not a 3800 Series modem or the connection between the two modems is poor.

**Access
Disabled**

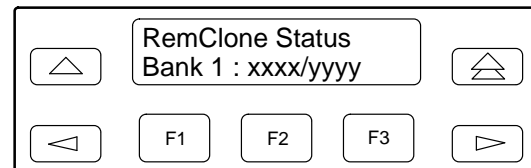
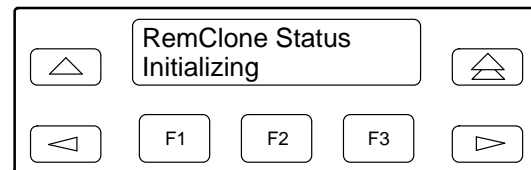
The remote modem's Access from Remote configuration is disabled. Also is displayed if the local modem has a firmware release prior to Release 3.0 and the remote modem has Release 3.0 or greater installed with either Answer Access Security or Originate Access Security enabled. In this case, both security methods must be disabled in the remote modem to achieve the download.

**Password
Invalid**

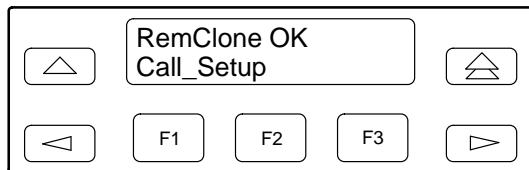
The local and remote modems' passwords do not match.

Correct the problem and attempt another download from the local modem. If this fails, contact your service representative.

After successful establishment of a Remote Cloning Download session, the following screens are displayed.



As data banks are transferred, the local and remote LCD's bottom line displays the status of the download process, and the number of records sent versus the total number of records for that bank.



If the download is successful, the local modem displays **Remote Clone OK** and the remote modem displays **Firmware Upgrade**. If the download took place over the dial network, the modems disconnect when the download is complete.

If unsuccessful, **RemClone Failed** is displayed on the LCD's top line. Attempt another download from the local modem. If this fails, contact your service representative.

To Local via DTE

This function is for use by Customer Service personnel only to transfer new firmware to 3800 Series modems.

Automatic Firmware Download

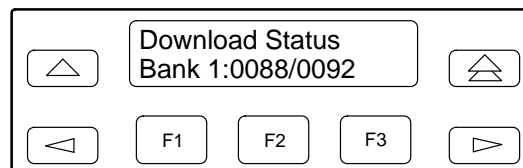
The latest 3800 Series firmware is available at no charge from the Automatic Firmware Download Center.

To download the firmware, your modem must be configured for dialing. Save your modem's current configuration to the Customer 1 or Customer 2 memory area, and load the Async Dial factory template. (See Chapter 9, *Configure Branch*, for information about saving and changing configuration options.)

Using your 3800 Series modem, dial the Automatic Firmware Download Center at **1-813-530-7026**. You may use any dialing technique (DCP Dial, AT command, or V.25bis Call Request).

If you have a DTE (a terminal or PC) attached to your modem, informational messages are displayed on it when the modem is connected. These show the amount of time the download will take.

However, a DTE is not required. The download begins without any operator action. When the download begins, the DCP displays download status messages with the data bank number, current block being loaded, and the total number of blocks. There are two data banks.

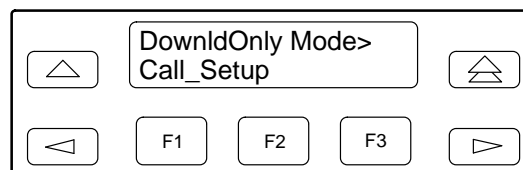


If the modem connected at 14,400 bps, the download takes about 10 minutes. When the download is complete, the modem resets itself and displays a normal status message (such as **Idle:19.2**).

Reload your configuration options from the Customer 1 or Customer 2 memory area that you saved them to.

Download Failure

If the download is interrupted, the modem is left in a state in which it can only be used to make or receive a call for a download.



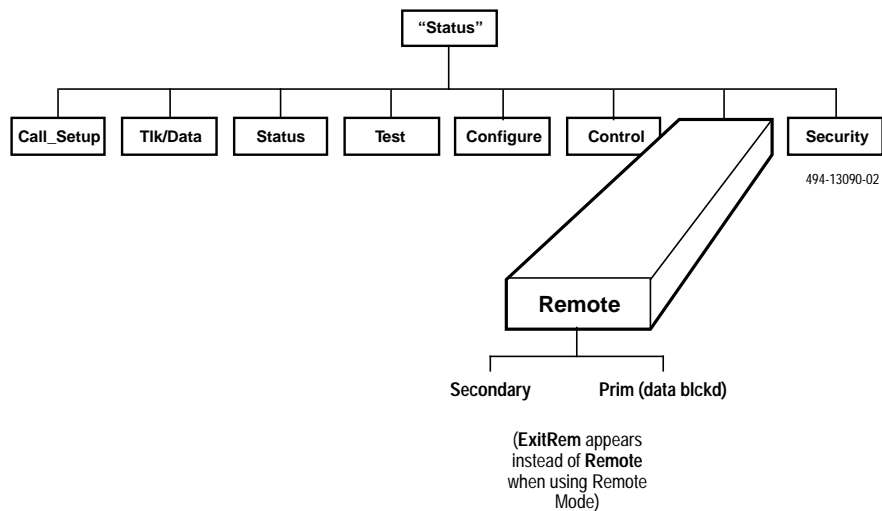
If an interruption occurs and your modem is left in this state, repeat the download process by directing the modem to dial the Automatic Firmware Download Center. (See Chapter 5, *Call Setup Branch*, for information about dialing a number using the DCP.) If you are unable to complete the download, call your service representative.

Remote Branch 11

Overview	11-1
Remote Branch	11-2

Overview

The Remote branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to control the remote modem's DCP using the local modem's DCP. This function allows you to change configuration options and control test functions in a remote modem. Any changes made to configuration options while using the Remote branch are not saved until you exit the Remote branch. This function is only available when using either V.32bis, V.32, V.33, or V.29 modulation schemes.



Remote Branch

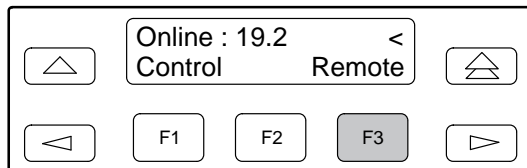
The following conditions must be met before using the Remote branch:

- A connection using either the dial network or leased lines must be established.
- The Access from Remote configuration option must be enabled in the remote modem.
- The Remote Access Password configuration option must be the same for both the local and remote modems.

Remote DCP access is accomplished using either the primary or secondary channel (if available) of the VF line. Using the primary channel gives a much faster response time due to the higher data rate, but it also interrupts data flow because primary data is stopped when Remote mode is active. Once Remote mode is terminated, the primary channel is automatically made available to data transmission.

Unlike primary channel communications, the secondary channel operates at a slower data rate and does not interrupt data flow. (V.32bis and V.32 are the only modulations available on the secondary channel.)

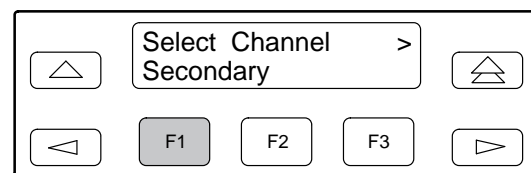
To access the Remote branch, make the following selections:



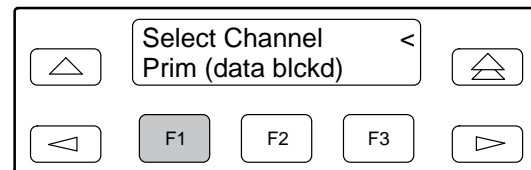
Press the \triangleright key until Remote appears. Select Remote.

NOTE

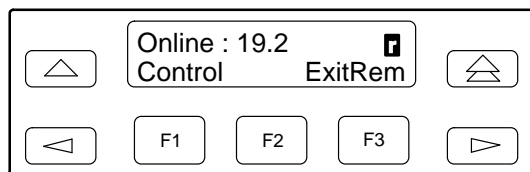
If a connection is not established between a local 3800 Series modem and a remote 3800 Series modem, the LCD displays **Remote Mode Fail – No Circuit.** Press the \triangle key to return to the Top-Level menu and dial again.




or



If operation over the secondary channel is desired, press any function key to select the secondary channel. **Secondary channel only appears if using V.32bis or V.32 modulation.** If operation over the primary channel is desired, press the \triangleright key until Prim appears, and press any function key.



If the remote modem accepts the password and the entry is successful, the Top-Level menu of the remote modem (Figure 11-1) appears on the local modem's LCD. An  appears in the upper right-hand corner indicating that what is displayed on your LCD is actually the Top-Level menu of the remote 3800 Series modem.

The Top-Level menu of the remote 3800 Series modem is similar to the local 3800 Series modem with the following exceptions:

- The Talk/Data branch does not appear.
- Change Directory is the only function available under the Call Setup branch.
- Self and Local Analog Loop do not appear under the Test branch when using the secondary channel. When using the primary channel, the Test branch does not appear.
- Exit Remote replaces Remote on the local modem's LCD.

To return to local modem operation, select ExitRem. Any changes made to configuration options in the remote modem are saved.

The following conditions can cause Remote branch access to fail:

- The local modem is not able to communicate with the remote modem because of a poor dial network or leased-line connection, or the remote modem is not a 3800 Series modem. If this is the case, the status message **No Response** appears on the LCD.
- If a connection is established but the remote modem's Access from Remote configuration option is disabled, then the status message **Access Disabled** appears on the LCD.
- If a connection is established but the wrong password is stored, the status message **Password Invalid** appears on the LCD. This configuration option must be enabled by the remote user.

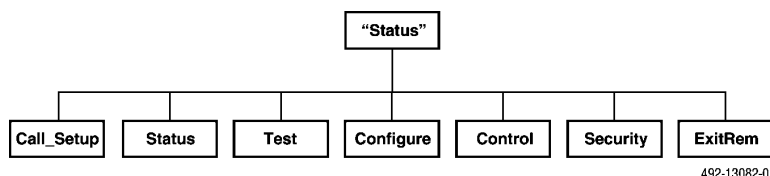


Figure 11-1. Top-Level Menu of a Remote 3800 Series Modem

Security 12

Overview	12-1
Originate Access Security	12-2
Answer Access Security	12-2
VF-Side Passwords	12-2
DTE-Side Passwords	12-3
Combination of VF-Side and DTE-Side Passwords	12-3
Security Branch	12-4
Set Access Ctrl	12-5
Administrative Password	12-5
EditPasswdTable	12-6
Set Answer Sec	12-8
Set Orig Sec	12-9
Set Admin PsWd	12-10
Reset Security	12-10
Security Password Entry Techniques	12-11
Answer Access Password (VF-Side and DTE-Side Entry Techniques)	12-11
Originate Access Password	12-12
Database Table Examples	12-12

Overview

NOTE

This chapter supports the operation of dial access security for the COMSPHERE 3800 Series modems. This chapter is self-supporting and can be removed to prevent unwanted knowledge of dial access security operation.

Although the security functions described in this chapter are designed to prevent unwanted user access to your network, the company recognizes that no security system is infallible.

Dial Access Security is an optional feature that allows you to control who has access to your COMSPHERE 3800 Series modem and ultimately your host DTE.

To take advantage of this security feature, you must create a database of passwords which are stored in the modem's nonvolatile memory. COMSPHERE 3800 Series modems can store a maximum of 20 passwords. (A Model 3811 with the optional Password Expansion Feature can store up to 3000 passwords.) Each password is assigned a series of parameters that determine the type of security protocol applied to it. This protocol is established in the Security branch of the Top-Level menu. Control of security functions is established in the Security Configuration Options group which is located in the Configuration branch of the Top-Level menu. These areas are described in the *Security Branch* section of this chapter and the *Security Configuration Options* section in Chapter 9.

The COMSPHERE 3800 Series modem uses an outbound and inbound method of security known respectively as Originate Access and Answer Access security. Both methods of security require some type of password entry whether it be included as part of an AT command dial string or entered directly from a remote user's DTE.

Originate Access Security

Originate Access lets you control who can originate a call from a local modem via the AT command set. This is useful in LAN and modem pooling applications. With Originate Access security, a local user's password is embedded in the AT dial command. If the password is valid, the user can dial out using this modem.

The following example illustrates the format for an Originate Access password:

TYPE: ATD%abc123%T9,8005551234

PRESS: Enter

Where: **ATD** is the AT dial command string.

Percent (%) is the start and stop AT command string interrupt character. The password must be embedded in these characters.

abc123 is the 10-alphanumeric character originate passwords.

T is the Tone (DTMF) dial modifier.

Comma (,) is the pause dial modifier.

98005551234 is the phone number.

Originate Access Security is enabled or disabled by the Set Originate Security group.

Answer Access Security

The other method of security, which is the primary focus of this chapter, is Answer Access. Answer Access allows the answering modem to restrict entry to the host DTE by ensuring that originating (remote) modems and/or users have been granted proper security access. Access can be granted by using one of three techniques: VF-side password entry, DTE-side password entry, or a combination of both.

VF-Side Passwords

VF-side password entry occurs between modems prior to connecting. Once the VF-side password is entered, no other user intervention is required since security negotiation is handled solely by the modems. When the answering modem is configured for VF entry technique, it goes off-hook and transmits to the originating modem either a secondary dial tone or silence (this choice depends on how the VF Prompt Type option is configured). The originating modem detects this response and transmits its password which corresponds to a preselected series of DTMF tones. Note that VF passwords can be from 1 to 8 digits in length; only decimal digits are permitted. The answering modem verifies the password against its own password database, and if valid, continues with the normal training sequence.

VF-side password works with any autodialer that supports second dial tone or quiet answer and can be implemented in one of three ways. First, the VF password can be embedded within the AT command dial string. Second, a phone number and password can be entered via the diagnostic control panel (DCP). (This is the preferred method for synchronous applications.) And finally, an attached telephone can be used to manually generate DTMF tones for the phone number and password. After the answering modem accepts the password and generates an answerback tone, the originating caller places the modem in Data mode and hangs up the phone.

The following examples illustrate two ways to enter a VF-side password:

TYPE: ATDP5551234TW12345678#

or

ATDT5551234@12345678#

PRESS: Enter

Where: **ATD** is the AT dial command.

P and **T** are the Pulse dial and Tone (DTMF) dial modifiers.

5551234 is the phone number.

W or **@** is the VF Prompt Tone option setting for second dial tone or quiet answer.

12345678 is the VF-side password.

is the password termination character.

NOTE

While pulse dial can be used to originate the call, DTMF tones must be used for the password. This can be accomplished by using the P and T modifiers appropriately. Refer to the Dial command in Chapter 14, *AT Command Set and S-Registers*, for more on modifiers.

This method of password entry requires that the answering modem be a 3800 Series modem. Of course, the 3800 Series modem must be configured for VF-side password entry and the originating user must know the correct VF-side password. The originating modem can be another 3800 Series modem or any vendor's modem.

Some originating modems may not recognize the W modifier as a wait for second dial tone. If your call disconnects due to a VF Password Timeout or an Unknown VF Password, first verify that the answering 3800 Series modem's VF Prompt Type is set for 2nd Dial Tone. Next, verify that the Dial Tone Detect configuration option in the originating modem is enabled. Third, insert several Pause (,) modifiers into the dial string instead of the W modifier. (For the 3800 Series modem, each Pause, which is determined by the Pause Time configuration option (S8), is equal to 2 seconds.) This allows a delay between the processing of the phone number by the answering modem and the transmission of the VF-side password by the originating modem.

Some experimentation may be necessary to determine the number of pauses necessary for your call.

DTE-Side Passwords

DTE-side password entry requires the originating user to supply a valid password via his DTE. This method of password entry occurs after the modems' training sequence, but before normal connection. The modems must be configured for asynchronous operation to use this type of security.

When using DTE-side password entry, the modems go through their normal training and error control negotiation. Once complete, the answering modem requests a valid password from the originating user. The originating user must enter, via the DTE, a password that can consist of digits and case-insensitive letters. Note that DTE passwords can be from 1 to 6 characters in length. The answering modem verifies the password against its password database table, and if valid, completes the data connection, thus allowing DTE data to be passed. As with VF-side password entry, the answering modem must be a 3800 Series modem and the originating modem can be either a 3800 Series modem or any vendor's modem.

The following example illustrates the format of DTE-side password:

TYPE: abc123

PRESS: Enter

Where: **abc123** is a 10-alphanumeric character number. Characters used for DTE-side passwords are case insensitive.

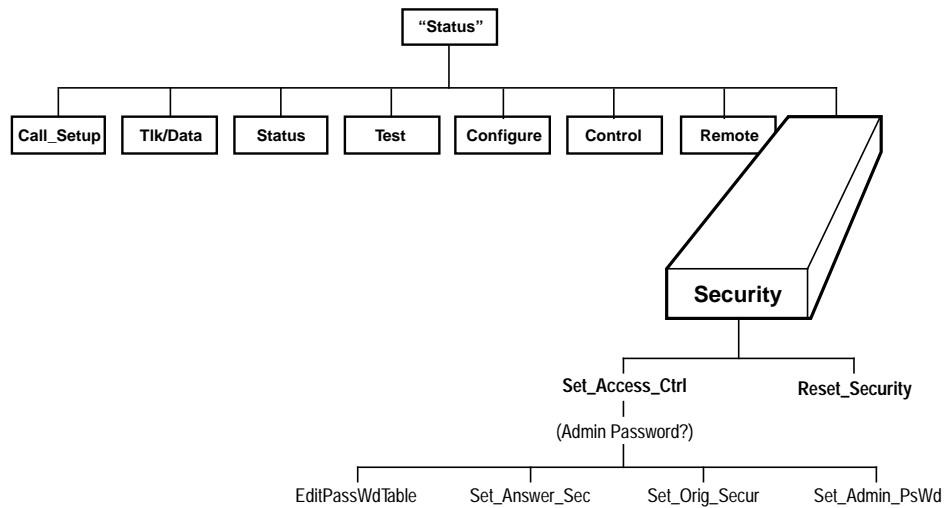
Combination of VF-Side and DTE-Side Passwords

The previously described methods of password entry can be combined to provide two layers of security. In this case, the modems negotiate VF-side password entry prior to training. If successful, the modems connect and then prompt the originating user for a valid password. If correctly entered, the modems connect.

Security Branch

The Security branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to change and save parameters that are critical to the dial access security password database. This database is a collection of passwords and their associated parameters that determine how the modems control password access.

Most of the functions within this branch are protected by an Administrative Password. Once the correct password is entered, these security functions appear on the modem's LCD. The two major functions that appear under the Security branch are Set Access Control and Reset Security.

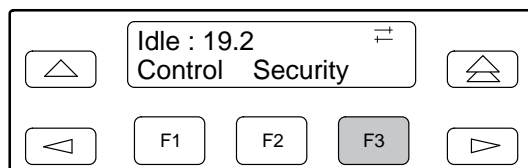


494-13089a-01

Set Access Ctrl

Set Access Control allows you to change security configuration. This function is protected by an Administrative Password. The Reset Security function allows you to reset the Administrative Password, but results in erasure of the modem's security database.

To access Security from the Top-Level menu, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Security appears. Select Security.

Set Access Control allows you to configure critical parameters contained within the security database table that control dial access security. These parameters are protected by an Administrative Password, which is an 8-digit decimal number.

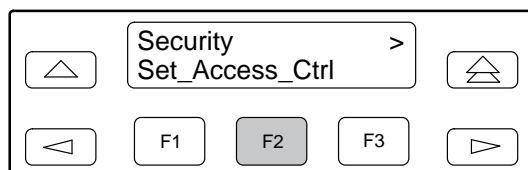
Set Access Control contains the Edit Password Table, Set Answer Security, Set Originate Security, and Set Administrative Password security configuration groups. These groups do not appear on the LCD until the correct Administrative Password is entered.

Administrative Password

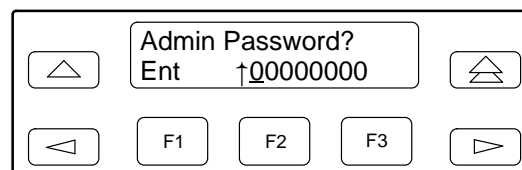
The Administrative Password is an 8-digit decimal number password that allows only authorized users to access Security branch functionality. This password must be entered every time you access the Security branch. This feature is shipped from the factory with the Administrative Password set to 00000000.

Once the correct Administrative Password is entered, the Edit Password Table, Set Answer Security, Set Originate Security, and Set Administrative Password groups can be displayed on the LCD.

To enter your Administrative Password from Set_Access_Ctrl, make the following selections:



Select Set_Access_Ctrl from the Security branch.

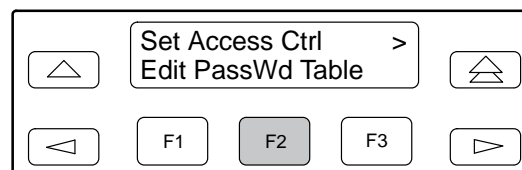


The Administrative Password appears. This occurs every time you enter the Security branch.

Select the F2 (\uparrow) key to increment password values.

Press the \triangleright key to move the cursor to the next position.

Continue this sequence until the full Administrative Password value appears and then press Ent.



If the correct value is entered, the EditPassWdTable group appears on the LCD.

Press the \triangleright key to scroll the Set Answer Security, Set Originate Security, and Set Administrative Password groups into view.

If an incorrect administrative password is entered, then the message **PassWrd Invalid** appears as well as the last password entered. Enter the correct password value or press the \triangle or \triangleleft key to exit the Security branch.

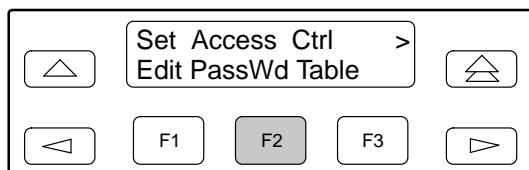
EditPasswdTable

The Password Table is the modem's security database. It contains all essential information for each password stored in the modem's nonvolatile memory. The information associated with each password is known as a record. Records are identified by an index which is a numeric name for a single record. A password's record is retrieved by entering its index.

The Edit Password Table group allows you to view and/or change the modem's security database table. To do this, you must retrieve a password's records by selecting its index (as described below).

The Edit Password Table group consists of the following options: Select Index, Password Type, Edit Password, and Save Edit.

To access EditPasswdTable from Set Access Ctrl, make the following selections:

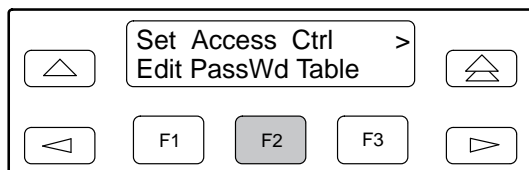


Select EditPassWdTable.

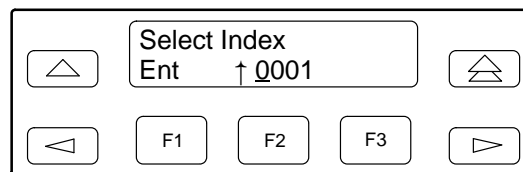
- Select Index

Select Index allows a specific record to be retrieved. Index addresses range from 0001 to 0020 for the Model 3810 and Model 3820 and from 0001 to 3000 for the Model 3811. The contents of this record can be viewed, edited, and saved.

To access Select Index, make the following selections:



Select EditPassWdTable.



Select Index appears.

Press the F2 (↑) key to increment index values.

Press the ▷ key to move the cursor to the next position.

Continue this sequence until the desired index appears, and then press Ent.

If an index outside of the range is entered, the message **Index Too Big** appears. Choose an index from the database's current index range.



After selecting an index, the Edit Password Table group's options (Password Type, Edit Password, and Save Edit?) appear in a series of LCD displays.

Keep the following in mind when scrolling down Edit Password Table:

- The current function and index are displayed on the LCD's top line.
- The LCD's bottom line displays Nxt and all selections available for the displayed security option.
- Nxt indicates that more options are available by scrolling down. It also indicates that the value displayed on the LCD is the current setting.
- Use the ◀ and ▶ keys to move selections into view.
- Use the F2 and F3 keys to choose selections.
- If no changes have been made, and the ⏏ key is pressed, the LCD returns to the Top-Level menu.
- If changes have been made, and the ⏏ or ⏏ key is pressed, then Save Edit? appears on the LCD.

Table 12-1 describes the settings of the Edit Table Password group options.

Table 12-1
Edit Password Table Group Options

PsWdType xxxx Nxt Cleared DTE_Entry VF_Entry VF_plus_DTE
<p>Password Type. Indicates whether this index location is configured for VF-side password, DTE-side password, or both. Cleared displays for an index location that contains no valid entry. Note that this option only identifies the type of password used. For proper operation, the type of password selected must be consistent with the type of security used. Refer to the Set Answer Security group option found later in this chapter.</p> <p>xxxx – Indicates the selected index location.</p> <p>Cleared – Indicates that the index location does not contain any valid selections and is currently unused.</p> <p>DTE_Entry – Indicates that this index's password is configured for DTE-side password entry. Special requirements apply when using DTE passwords if the Set Answer Security option (Answer Security mode) is set to VF_&_DTE or VF_w/_DTE. Refer to the note following VF plus DTE.</p> <p>VF_Entry – Indicates that this index's password is configured for VF-side password entry. This selection requires that the Set Answer Security option (Answer Security mode) be set to VF_&_DTE.</p> <p>VF plus DTE – Indicates that both layers of password entry are used with this index's password. This location is configured so that the answering modem sends a prompt for the DTE-side password after receiving a valid VF-side password. This setting requires that the Set Answer Security option be set to VF_&_DTE or VF_w/_DTE.</p> <p>NOTE: If the Set Answer Security option (Answer Security mode) is set to VF_&_DTE or VF_w/_DTE, special requirements apply in order to use passwords with their type set to DTE_Entry. The originating caller must first enter a valid VF password. If the VF password entered is configured in the security database with the type VF_plus_DTE, the user is then required to enter a password configured in the database table with the type DTE_Entry. In the case of VF_w/_DTE mode, the DTE_Entry password must immediately follow the VF_plus_DTE password in the password table.</p>
Edit PsWd xxxx Nxt ↑ yyyyyyyy or zzzzzz
<p>Edit Password. Allows the password associated with this index to be changed.</p> <p>NOTE: This security option does not appear if the Password Type option is set for Cleared.</p> <p>xxxx – Indicates the current index location value.</p> <p>yyyyyyyy – Indicates the current password value for this index. If the Password Type is VF_Entry or VF_plus_DTE, then the password value is an 8-digit decimal number.</p> <p>zzzzzz – Indicates the current password value for this index. If Password Type is configured for DTE_Entry, then the password value is a 10-character alphanumeric number.</p>
Save Edit? xxxx Edit Save Yes No
<p>Save Edit. Saves any changes made in the EditPassWdTable group.</p> <p>xxxx – Indicates the current index field value.</p> <p>Edit – Returns the LCD to the Password Type option and does not save any changes made to the index or password table.</p> <p>Save – Saves changes made to the index or Password Table. Once selected, the Select Index screen appears and increments to the next index value.</p> <p>Yes No – Appears only if changes are made to any of the options within the Password Table and the  or  key is pressed before reaching the Save Edit? option. After deciding whether or not to save changes, the LCD displays Select Index and increments to the next index value.</p>

Set Answer Sec

Set Answer Security determines if dial access security is enabled or disabled. This method of inbound security is configured in the answering modem. Although this also appears under the Security Configuration Option group in Chapter 9, it can only be changed from the Set Answer Sec LCD display in the Security branch.

To access Set_Answer_Sec from Set Access Ctrl, make the following selections:

Press the key until Set_Answer_Sec appears.

Select Set_Answer_Sec.

Table 12-2 describes the settings of the Set Answer Security group option.

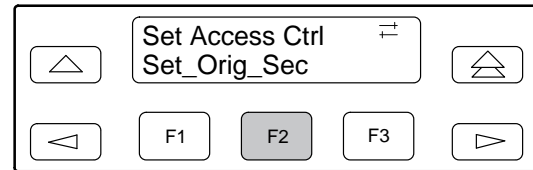
Table 12-2
Set Answer Security Group Options

Set Answer Sec
No_Answ_Sec DTE_Only VF_&_DTE VF_w/_DTE
<p>Set Answer Security. Is the primary method for enabling or disabling the dial access security function.</p> <p>No Answer Security – Disables the dial access security feature.</p> <p>DTE Only – The answering modem is enabled for security. The originating user must supply a password when prompted.</p> <p>Note that a call attempt never enters data mode if the answering modem is configured for DTE_Only and the originating caller attempts to enter a password using only the VF-side password entry technique.</p> <p>NOTE: In modem pooling applications where modems are connected to a multiline hunt group (rotary), all modems must have this configuration option set to the same value.</p> <p>VF_&_DTE – The answering modem is enabled for security. The modems negotiate security using the VF-side password entry technique protocol. If successful, and the Password Type for this particular VF password is set for VF_&_DTE, a password is requested from the originating user. If successful, the modems connect and can pass data.</p> <p>NOTE: A call attempt fails if the answering modem is configured for VF_&_DTE and the originating caller does not first enter a VF-side password.</p> <p>VF_w/_DTE – Allows specification of related VF-Side and DTE-side password pairs. In this configuration, a DTE-side password submitted must be a valid Password Table entry, and must match the particular entry associated with the valid VF-side password that was submitted.</p> <p>The passwords are associated with each other by their index in the Password Table: VF_plus_DTE passwords occupy odd-numbered index locations; their DTE_Entry counterparts occupy the even-numbered index locations that immediately follow. So, for example, if a VF-side password is entered that matches the entry in index location 11, the DTE-side password subsequently entered must match the entry in index location 12.</p> <p>VF_plus_DTE passwords must be unique in a VF_w/_DTE configuration. An attached DTE in asynchronous operation is required for DTE-side password entry.</p> <p>Up to 10 password pairs are permitted. On the 3811 modem this can be optionally increased with the Expanded Password Table feature, which permits 1500 password pairs.</p>

Set Orig Sec

Set Originate Security controls whether or not the modem can originate a call using AT commands when the dial access security feature is installed. This method of outbound security only applies to modems originating a call.

To access Set_Orig_Sec from Set Access Ctrl, make the following selections:



Press the \triangleright key until Set_Orig_Sec appears.

Select Set_Orig_Sec.

Table 12-3 describes the settings of the Set Originate Security group option.

Table 12-3
Set Originate Security Group Options

Set Orig Sec
No_OrigSec EnaOrigSec
<p>Set Originate Security. Controls the security protection for origination of calls when AT commands are used.</p> <p>The originate password must be included in all AT dial command strings if this configuration option is enabled. If not included, or incorrectly entered, the message ERROR is returned to the DTE.</p> <p>No Originate Security – Disables originate security so that a modem can originate a call using AT commands.</p> <p>Enable Originate Security – When using AT commands, the modem will only place a call if a valid password is entered along with an AT dial command. If the password is not entered, then ERROR is returned to the DTE, and the dial command is canceled.</p>

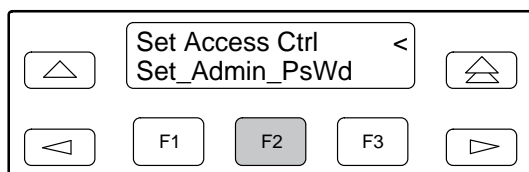
Set Admin PsWd

Set Administrative Password is used to change the Administrative Password value. The Administrative Password is an 8-digit decimal number that allows authorized users to enter the Access Security Control function.

NOTE

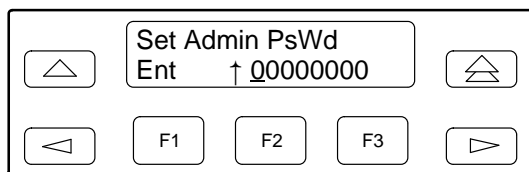
If this value is forgotten, then the only way to access any of the security functions is by selecting Reset Security. This restores the password to a known value*, but erases the contents of the modem's security database.

To change the Administrative Password, make the following selections:



Press \triangleright until Set_Admin_PsWd appears.

Select Set_Admin_PsWd.



The Administrative Password appears.

Press the F2 (\uparrow) key to increment password values.

Press the \triangleright key to move the cursor to the next position. Continue this sequence until the new password value is entered.

Press the F1 key to save the new password value.

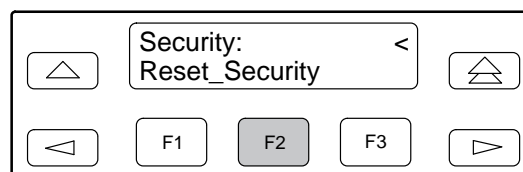
Reset Security

Reset Security is the second major function within the Security branch of the Top-Level menu. It erases all contents of the security database table and resets all index locations to Cleared. Two selections appear under Reset Security: Abort Security Reset and Erase All PassWords. Use Reset Security if you want to redo the entire security database table.

CAUTION

This function can be used as a last resort if the Administrative Password is no longer known. This function causes the Administrative Password to default to the Reset Default password, and erases the contents of the database table.

To reset security, make the following selections:



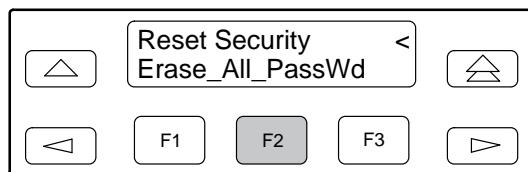
From the Security branch, press \triangleright until Reset_Security appears.

Select Reset_Security.



To abort this function, select Abort_Sec_Reset. Nothing is erased and the LCD returns to the main security display.

* This value appears as a single number on the last page of this document.



To reset security, press \triangleright until `Erase_All_PassWd` appears on the LCD.

Select `Erase_All_PassWd`.

The entire security database is erased and the Administrative Password defaults to the Reset Default password value. This value appears as a single number on the last page of this document.

Security Password Entry Techniques

The previous sections described how to set up and configure your network for dial access security. Once configured and enabled, you must now supply a password to originate or answer a call.

The following examples demonstrate how to enter an Answer Access security password string and an Originate Access password string. Note that dial access security messages, that may appear on the LCD, are listed in Table 4-6 in Chapter 4.

Answer Access Password (VF-Side and DTE-Side Entry Techniques)

Answer Access password security uses two password entry techniques: VF-side password and DTE-side password entry. A VF-side password consists of DTMF tones and is entered by the originating caller via the AT command set, the DCP, or manually with an attached telephone.

A VF-side password can be entered with the AT dial command. The following examples illustrate two ways to enter a VF-side password:

TYPE: `ATDT5551234W12345678#`

or

`ATDP5551234T@12345678#`

PRESS: Enter

Where: **ATD** is the AT dial command.

P and **T** are Pulse dial and Tone (DTMF) dial modifiers.

5551234 is the phone number. **5551234** is the phone number.

W is the second dial tone dial modifiers.

@ is the wait for quiet answer dial modifiers.

12345678 is the password. VF-side passwords must consist of 1–8 decimal digits.

is the password terminator character.

NOTE

While pulse dial can be used to originate the call, DTMF tones must be used for the password. This can be accomplished by using the P and T modifiers appropriately. Refer to the Dial command in Chapter 14, *AT Command Set and S-Registers*, for more information about modifiers.

Some originating modems may not recognize the W modifier as a wait for second dial tone. If your call disconnects due to a VF Password Timeout or an Unknown VF Password, first verify that the answering 3800 Series modem's VF Prompt Type is set for 2nd Dial Tone. Next, verify that the Dial Tone Detect configuration option in the originating modem is enabled. Third, insert several Pause (,) modifiers into the dial string instead of the W modifier. (For the 3800 Series modem, each Pause, which is determined by the Pause Time configuration option (S8), is equal to 2 seconds.) This allows a delay between the processing of the phone number by the answering modem and the transmission of the VF-side password by the originating modem.

Some experimentation may be necessary to determine the number of pauses necessary for your call.

A DTE-side password is entered after the modems have trained, but before a normal connection is established. The following example illustrates how to enter a DTE-side password:

TYPE: abc123

PRESS: Enter

Where: **abc123** is a 10-alphanumeric character password. Characters used for DTE-side passwords are case-insensitive. DTE-side passwords can be from 1 to 6 characters in length.

If a valid password is entered, then the modems connect and data can pass.

Originate Access Password

An Originate Access password is entered by a local user to gain access to a local 3800 Series modem. This password is embedded in the AT dial command and cannot be entered from the diagnostic control panel (DCP).

The following example describes how to enter an Originate Access security password:

TYPE: ATD%abc123%T9,8005551234

PRESS: Enter

Where: **ATD** is the AT dial command.

Percent (%) is the start and stop dial string command interrupt characters; the Originate Access password must be enclosed by these characters.

abc123 is the 10-alphanumeric character Originate Access password.

T is the Tone (DTMF) dial modifier.

Comma (,) is a pause dial parameter.

98005551234 is the phone number.

Database Table Examples

The following examples illustrate possible database tables in which the password type is configured for VF Entry, DTE Entry or a combination of VF, DTE, and VF plus DTE Entry. These tables are shown for illustrative purposes only. Passwords shown are not representative of good password selections.

NOTE

The **Assigned to** column is not stored in the modem.

Table 12-4 is an example of a database table with passwords configured for VF Entry only. This type of password is entered within the AT command dial string.

Table 12-4
Security Database Table
Using VF-Side Passwords

VF Password Only			
Index	Password	Type	Assigned to
21	1	VF_Entry	Denver office
31	12	VF_Entry	Chicago office
41	1212	VF_Entry	Dallas office
51	953246	VF_Entry	Miami office, modem 1
52	46958373	VF_Entry	Miami office, modem 2
61	32562682	VF_Entry	Atlanta office

Table 12-5 is an example of a database table with passwords configured for DTE Entry only. This type of password is entered via the originating user's DTE.

Table 12-6 is an example of a security database table that uses a mixture of VF and DTE passwords.

Table 12-5
Security Database Table Using DTE-Side Passwords

DTE Password Only			
Index	Password	Type	Assigned to
1001	winter	DTE_Entry	User A
1002	summer	DTE_Entry	User B
1003	spring	DTE_Entry	User C
1004	fall	DTE_Entry	User D
1005	z	DTE_Entry	User E
1006	3g8sX4	DTE_Entry	User F

Table 12-6
Security Database Table Using Both VF-Side and DTE-Side Passwords

VF and DTE Passwords			
Index	Password	Type	Assigned to
121	1	VF_Entry	Denver office*
131	12	VF_plus_DTE	Chicago office**
141	1212	VF_plus_DTE	Dallas office**
151	953246	VF_plus_DTE	Miami office, modem 1**
152	46958373	VF_plus_DTE	Miami office, modem 2**
161	32562682	VF_Entry	Atlanta office*
1131	winter	DTE_Entry	User C, Chicago office**
1141	summer	DTE_Entry	User A, Dallas office**
1142	spring	DTE_Entry	User B, Dallas office**
1151	fall	DTE_Entry	User D, Miami office**
1152	z	DTE_Entry	User E, Miami office**
1153	3g8sX4	DTE_Entry	User F, Miami office**

* Users in the Denver and Atlanta offices are connected to the DTE after entering a valid VF password (and the modems train and negotiate error control) without entering a DTE password.

** Users at the Chicago, Dallas, and Miami offices are required to enter a DTE password after the VF password is entered via the AT dial command.

Table 12-7 is an example of a security database table that uses paired VF and DTE passwords for use in VF_w/_DTE answer security mode.

Table 12-7
Security Database Table Using Paired VF-Side and DTE-Side Passwords

VF and DTE Passwords			
Index	Password	Type	Assigned to
01	00110001	VF_plus_DTE	User A, Denver office
02	user1	DTE_Entry	User A Logon ID*
03	00110002	VF_plus_DTE	User B, Denver office
04	ralph	DTE_Entry	User B Logon ID*
05	4695873	VF_plus_DTE	Berlin office
06	guest	DTE_Entry	Guest Logon ID*
07	4695873	VF_plus_DTE	Berlin office
08	actmgr	DTE_Entry	Account Manager Logon ID*
09	350647	VF_plus_DTE	User C
10	miami	DTE_Entry	Miami office*
11	00159766	VF_plus_DTE	User D
12	miami	DTE_Entry	Miami office*
* For this password to be valid, the VF_plus_DTE password entered must be the one immediately preceding the DTE_Entry password in the table.			

Fax Operation 13

Overview	13-1
Fax Operation	13-1

Overview

The procedures for sending and receiving facsimile documents with your modem depend on the fax software you use. This chapter does not contain specific procedures, but rather information that may make it easier for you to use the documentation that came with your fax software.

Fax Operation

With the fax option installed, your modem, in combination with your computer and fax software, is capable of emulating the functions of a fax machine. You can use it to send and receive fax files in communication with another fax modem, or with a standard fax machine. These fax files are images turned into the sort of data that can be stored in your computer.

Fax machines and fax modems use special protocols different from those used by standard modems. The device you intend to communicate with must be compatible with your modem, which means that it must be capable of using the same protocol. Your 3800 Series modem supports the Class 2 (EIA/TIA SP-2388) Group III fax, using V.17, V.29, or V.27ter modulations.

Before you can send or receive a fax, the following must be true:

- Your modem's firmware must support the fax option.
- You must have fax software installed on your computer.
- Your fax software must support Class 2 fax.
- Your modem must be online with a compatible fax modem or fax machine.
- You must have configured your modem according to the specifications of your fax software manual. For example:
 - Some fax software requires that the modem have Auto-Answer disabled. You can set this using the `AutoAnswerRing#` configuration option under the Line Dialer branch, or by issuing the `ATS0=0` command.
 - Some fax software requires that the modem use software flow control. You can set this using the `FlwCntlofDTE` and `FlwCntlofMdm` configuration options under the V.42/MNP/Buffer branch, or by issuing an `AT\Q1` command.
 - DTR Action should be set for standard RS232-D operation. Use the `Stndrd_RS232` setting of DTR Action (in the DTE Interface configuration options group), or the `AT&D2` command.
 - LSD (Line Signal Detect) Control should be set for standard RS232-D operation. Use the `Stndrd_RS232` setting of LSD Control (in the DTE Interface configuration options group), or the `AT&C1` command.
 - Data should be buffered during Error Control (EC) negotiation. Use the `Enable` setting of EC Negotiate Bufr (in the V.42/MNP/Buffer configuration options group), or the `AT\C1` command.

There are no Diagnostic Control Panel (DCP) functions unique to fax operation. If your fax software requires that you change the configuration of your modem, see the appropriate sections of Chapter 9, *Configure Branch*.

The DCP is disabled during fax operation.

Your fax software uses AT commands to tell the modem what to do. These commands, and the replies your modem makes (such as "OK") may be displayed on your computer terminal during fax operation, but this depends on your software. You do not have to issue AT commands yourself, unless you use AT commands to configure the modem.

For more information about fax operation, see the manual that came with your fax software.

AT Command Set and S-Registers14

Overview	14-1
Operating Modes	14-1
Switching Between Data Mode and Online Command Mode	14-1
Escape Sequence and Escape Guard Time	14-1
Command Guidelines	14-2
AT Command List	14-2
AT Command Format	14-3
S-Register List	14-15
S-Register Format	14-15

Overview

The AT command set provides an alternative method to the front panel for entering commands that control the operation and configuration of the 3800 Series modems. This chapter discusses guidelines necessary to operate AT commands as well as listing the modifiers for all AT commands supported by the 3800 Series modems. AT commands are issued from asynchronous DTEs (such as a personal computer).

Operating Modes

The 3800 Series modem has two operating modes, Command mode and Data mode. Before a modem goes online (establishes a successful connection with a remote modem), it is considered to be in Command mode; an idle state where you can modify its operating parameters or issue modem commands.

In Command mode, any command issued is acknowledged with a response in either words or digits known as a result code. Refer to Table B-1 for a listing of result codes.

Once the modems are online, either by answering or originating a call, they automatically switch to Data mode. Data mode is a state where any entries made from the DTE are considered data and are transmitted and received between modems. The modems remain in Data mode until the connection is broken or until they are forced into online Command mode using the escape sequence.

Switching Between Data Mode and Online Command Mode

Sometimes it is necessary to change operating parameters while the modems are online. The escape sequence allows you to toggle the modem between Data mode and online Command mode while maintaining a connection with the remote modem. This is accomplished using the escape sequence (+++) to exit Data mode and the O command to return to Data mode.

Escape Sequence and Escape Guard Time

The escape sequence is only issued when the modem is online and in Data mode. The 3800 Series modem uses three consecutive plus (+) characters as the escape sequence. (To change this value, refer to S-register S2 discussed later in Table 14-2 in the *S-Register Format* section.)

To prevent the modem from interpreting an embedded +++ in data as an escape sequence, the Escape Guard Time value determines the length of the pause before and after the escape sequence is issued. The 3800 Series modem uses a one second pause as the Escape Guard Time. (To change this value, refer to S-register S12 discussed later in Table 14-2 in the *S-Register Format* section.)

To enter online Command mode while in Data mode, enter the following sequence:

TYPE: +++

Use the O command to return to Data mode from online Command mode. Enter the following command:

TYPE: ATO

PRESS: Enter

Command Guidelines

Review the following guidelines before using any AT Commands.

- The escape sequence (+++) is used to enter online Command mode from Data mode.
- The asynchronous character format for the AT command set must be one of the following:
 - 8 data bits + no parity + 1 stop bit.
 - 7 data bits + no parity + 2 stop bits.
 - 7 data bits + parity + 1 stop bit (parity can be odd, even, mark, or space).
- All commands (except A/ (repeat last command) and +++) must begin with the characters AT and end by pressing the Enter key. The AT (or at) prefix clears the command buffer and matches the modem speed and parity to that of the DTE. Commands can be upper- or lowercase, but the modem will not recognize mixed case prefixes (At or aT).

- Commands can be entered one at a time or in strings. Strings can have up to 40 characters after the AT prefix. You can use spaces, hyphens (–), and parentheses () as fillers to make the commands easier to read; the modem ignores these fillers and they are not counted among the characters which make up the command string. Commands must be entered on one line and end with the carriage return character (Enter key).
- Commands with the suffix *n* have several options associated with them. For example, in the *Ln* command, L1 sets the speaker volume to Low and L3 sets the speaker volume to High. If no value is entered for the *n* suffix, the modem assumes a zero (0) value.
- The A/ command (without pressing the Enter key) causes the modem to repeat the last command entered.
- Valid commands are acknowledged with numeric or word result codes (unless the result codes have been disabled using the Q1 command). (See Appendix B for a list of result codes with numeric and word equivalents.)

AT Command List

AT commands are issued from an asynchronous DTE, such as a PC, and control the modem's operation and software configuration. AT commands are only applicable when the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT. (See &M*n* and &Q*n* commands.)

Table 14-1 lists all AT commands supported by the 3800 Series modem. The first column lists the AT command. The second column defines and lists all possible values for that command. The Async Dial factory default is listed in bold. The third column lists the key sequence used to enter the equivalent front panel command. Use this to reference commands in Chapters 5 through 12 if further description is necessary.

AT Command Format

AT commands are entered in Command mode using the following format:

TYPE: ATX*n*

Where: X is the AT command and *n* is the specific value for that command.

PRESS: Enter

In Table 14-1, the value for X is listed in the **AT Command** column and the value for *n* is listed in the **Description** column.

Table 14-1
(1 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch
A/	Repeat Last Command Re-executes last command string. (Not to be preceded with AT or followed by pressing the Return key.)	Call Setup\Answer
A	Answer Mode Goes off-hook and attempts to establish a connection without waiting for a ring.	None
B <i>n</i>	CCITT/Bell Mode Determines the protocol used if the dial-line rate is set to 300 or 1200 bps. It has no effect if the rate is set to another value. (See %B.) B, B0 V.21 or V.22 (300 or 1200 bps) B1 Bell 103 or Bell 212A (300 or 1200 bps) The factory default is B1.	
D <i>n</i>	Dial Begins the dialing sequence. The dial string <i>n</i> (modifiers and telephone number) is entered after the D command. Any digit 0–9, *, #, A, B, C, D, may be dialed as a DTMF tone. Only the digits 0–9 can be dialed in Pulse Dial mode. The following example shows how to dial through a PBX. The dial string consists of the command string and the telephone number: <div style="text-align: center;"> ATD9W5551234 Command Telephone String Number └──────────┘ Dial String </div> Modifiers include the following parameters: T – Tone (DTMF) dial. Any digit 0–9, *, #, A, B, C, or D can be dialed as tone. P – Pulse dial. Only the digits 0–9 can be dialed in Pulse Dial mode. NOTE: Once a dialing method (tone or pulse) has been specified, it will only remain active until the end of that dial string. The factory setting is tone dial. , – Pause. Causes the modem to pause before processing the next character in the dial string. The length of this pause is determined by the setting of the Pause Time configuration option (see Line Dialer configuration option group) or by value held in S-register S8.	None

Table 14-1
(2 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch
Dn (cont'd)	<p>W or + – Wait for dial tone. Modem waits for a second dial tone before processing the dial string. This can be the initial dial tone or a second tone received when dialing through a tandem PBX (for example, 9+555-6789), or when invoking special features (for example, 70#W555-6789, where 70# disables Call Waiting).</p> <p>R – Reverse Dial mode. Causes the originating modem to send out an answertone once it no longer detects ringback. (Ringback is the ring you hear at the originating site when making a call.) The R parameter must be the last character in the dial string. For correct operation, at least one ringback must be detected; therefore, the remote modem should be configured to answer on the second ring or subsequent rings.</p> <p>@ – Quiet answer. Wait for five seconds of silence after dialing the number. If the silence is not detected, the modem sends either a NO ANSWER result to the DTE.</p> <p>! – Hook flash. This causes the modem to go on-hook for 0.5 seconds then return to off-hook.</p> <p>; – Return to Command mode. Modem returns to Command mode after dialing a number without disconnecting the call. This is useful when the number exceeds 40 characters, or when the wait time between parts of a dial string is unknown.</p> <p>Space, – , and () . These characters are ignored by the dial string and can be included in the dial string to enhance readability.</p>	
DS=n	<p>Dial Stored Number Dials the number stored in Location <i>n</i> (1–10). (To store a telephone number, refer to the &Zn=x command.)</p>	Call Setup\Dial\Dial Directory:
En	<p>Command Character Echo E0 Disables echo to the DTE. E1 Enables echo to the DTE.</p>	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
Hn	<p>Hook Switch Control H0 Modem goes on-hook. H1 Modem goes off-hook.</p>	<p>H0: Call Setup\Disconnect or Control\Remove Make Busy H1: Control\Make Busy</p>

Table 14-1
(3 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch
<i>In</i>	Identification I0 Displays product code; default is 144. I1 Displays 3-digit firmware revision number. I2 Performs an EPROM check. I3 Displays the modem's serial number. I4 Displays the modem's model number. I5 Displays the part number of the circuit card. I6 Displays the firmware release number. I9 Displays 3-digit firmware revision number (same as I1). I10= <i>n</i> Changes the value of the product code displayed by the I0 command; <i>n</i> is a number from 0 to 4: I10 = 0 sets product code to 144 I10 = 1 sets product code to 240 I10 = 2 sets product code to 480 I10 = 3 sets product code to 960 I10 = 4 sets product code to 120 I11 Performs a checksum of the modem's firmware and displays the results in hexadecimal. (There is no DCP equivalent of this command.) I19 Displays the entire firmware revision level.	Status\Identity
<i>Ln</i>	Speaker Volume L0 Selects low volume. L1 Selects low volume. L2 Selects medium volume L3 Selects high volume.	Control\Speaker Configure>Edit\Misc
<i>Mn</i>	Speaker On/Off M0 Speaker always off. M1 Speaker on until carrier signal is detected. M2 Speaker always on.	Control\Speaker Configure>Edit\Misc
<i>O</i>	Return to Online or Data Mode Returns modem to Data mode from Online Command mode.	None
<i>P</i>	Pulse Dial Sets the modem for pulse dial mode.	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer
<i>Qn</i>	Result Codes Q0 Enables modem to send result codes to the DTE. Q1 Disables modem from sending result codes to the DTE. Q2 Enables in Originate mode only for modem to send result codes to the DTE. Required for most UNIX applications.	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
<i>Sr=n</i>	Change S-Register Changes contents of S-register (where <i>r</i> is the S-register, and <i>n</i> is the new value).	None
<i>Sr?</i>	Display S-Register Displays value of S-register where <i>r</i> is the S-register number.	None
<i>T</i>	Tone Dial Sets the modem for tone dial mode.	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer

Table 14-1
(4 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch																																				
Vn	Result Code Format V0 Displays result codes in Number (1) format digits. V1 Displays result codes as text. V2 Displays result codes in Number (2) format (digits).	Configure\Edit\DTE Dialer																																				
Xn	Extended Result Code, Dial Tone Detect, and Busy Tone Detect Configuration Options <table><tr><th></th><th><i>Ext Result Code</i></th><th><i>Dial Tone Detect</i></th><th><i>Busy Tone Detect</i></th></tr><tr><td>X0</td><td>Disable</td><td>Disable</td><td>Disable</td></tr><tr><td>X1</td><td>Enable</td><td>Disable</td><td>Disable</td></tr><tr><td>X2</td><td>Enable</td><td>Enable</td><td>Disable</td></tr><tr><td>X3</td><td>Enable</td><td>Disable</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>X4</td><td>Enable</td><td>Enable</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>X5</td><td>Add/EC</td><td>Enable</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>X6</td><td>Add/V42,MNP</td><td>Enable</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>X7</td><td>Use DTE Rate</td><td>Enable</td><td>Enable</td></tr></table> <p>EXTENDED RESULT CODE</p> <p>Enable. Displays all result codes listed in Table B-1 except for error control suffix.</p> <p>Disable. Only displays OK, CONNECT, RING, NO CARRIER, ERROR.</p> <p>Add/EC. Displays result codes with /EC suffix. Add/V42,MNP. Displays result codes with either V.42 or MNP suffix. Use DTE Rate. Displays DTE data rate instead of line rate.</p> <p>Add/V42,MNP. Displays result codes with either V.42 or MNP suffix.</p> <p>Use DTE Rate. Displays DTE data rate instead of line rate.</p> <p>DIAL TONE DETECT</p> <p>Enable. Sets the modem for dial tone detect.</p> <p>Disable. Sets the modem for blind dialing.</p> <p>BUSY TONE DETECT</p> <p>Enable. Modem monitors for busy tone.</p> <p>Disable. Modem ignores busy tone.</p>		<i>Ext Result Code</i>	<i>Dial Tone Detect</i>	<i>Busy Tone Detect</i>	X0	Disable	Disable	Disable	X1	Enable	Disable	Disable	X2	Enable	Enable	Disable	X3	Enable	Disable	Enable	X4	Enable	Enable	Enable	X5	Add/EC	Enable	Enable	X6	Add/V42,MNP	Enable	Enable	X7	Use DTE Rate	Enable	Enable	Extended Result Code: Configure\Edit\DTE Dialer Dial Tone Detect: Configure\Edit\Line Dialer Busy Tone Detect: Configure\Edit\Line Dialer
	<i>Ext Result Code</i>	<i>Dial Tone Detect</i>	<i>Busy Tone Detect</i>																																			
X0	Disable	Disable	Disable																																			
X1	Enable	Disable	Disable																																			
X2	Enable	Enable	Disable																																			
X3	Enable	Disable	Enable																																			
X4	Enable	Enable	Enable																																			
X5	Add/EC	Enable	Enable																																			
X6	Add/V42,MNP	Enable	Enable																																			
X7	Use DTE Rate	Enable	Enable																																			
Yn	Long Space Disconnect Y0 Disable. Ignores long space. Y1 Enable. Disconnects if long space is detected. Enables transmission of a long space.	Configure\Edit\Line Dialer																																				
Zn	Reset and Load Active Z0 Loads configuration options from Active (Saved) to Active (Operating). Z1 Loads configuration options from Customer 1 to Active (Operating). Z2 Loads configuration from Customer 2 to Active (Operating). Z3 Loads configuration options from Active (Saved) to Active (Operating) and performs a “soft” reset (if the modem is connected, it is disconnected). Z9 Performs a full modem reset, as if the power were turned off and on.	Control\Reset																																				

Table 14-1
(5 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch
&C <i>n</i>	LSD Control &C0 Forced On. LSD on at all times. &C1 Standard RS232. LSD is on when the remote modem's carrier signal is detected. LSD is off when carrier signal is not detected. &C2 Wink When Disconnect. LSD normally forced ON, turns Off for approximately one second upon disconnecting. &C2 Wink When Disconnect. LSD normally forced ON, turns Off for approximately one second upon disconnecting. &C3 Follows DTR. State of LSD follows state of DTR. &C4 Simulated Control Carrier. State of LSD follows state of remote modem's RTS. &C5 =DTR/Disconnect Off. State of LSD follows state of DTR except upon a disconnect where DTR remains ON and LSD turns Off. DTR must then toggle Off and ON to turn LSD ON. Use this setting for AT&T DATAKIT applications. Note that to use this option, the DTR Action configuration option must be set to Stndrd_RS232 (&D1 or &D2). &C6 Bridge Retrain. LSD behaves as if it were set for Stndrd_RS232, except that it is turned off when a retrain condition lasts longer than 10 seconds, and turned on again when no retrain condition is detected for a period of 10 seconds.	Configure\Edit\DTE Interface
&D <i>n</i>	DTR Action &D0 Ignore. Modem ignores the true status of DTR and treats it as always ON. &D1 Off=Command Mode. Modem enters online Command Mode if connected when DTR switches Off. &D2 Standard RS232. DTR Signal is controlled by the DTE. &D3 Off=Reload Strap. Follows Standard RS232 operation, except that when DTR switches Off, the modem loads the Active (Saved) area into the Active (Operating) area. &D4 Controls On-Hook. Follows Standard RS232 operation, except that modem does not disconnect until DTR is lowered by the DTE. &D5 Controls TX Mute. Follows Standard RS232 operation, except that when DTR is lowered at the answering modem, the modem mutes transmitter output.	Configure\Edit\DTE Interface
&F <i>n</i>	Select Factory Default Configuration Options Loads factory configuration options into Active (Operating) area. &F0 Async Dial &F1 Sync Dial &F2 Sync Leased: Answer &F3 UNIX Dial &F4 Sync Leased: Originate &F5 Cellular (Mobile) &F6 Cellular (PSTN)	Configure\Factory

Table 14-1
(6 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch																																				
&Fn (cont'd)	<p>If your modem is attached to a cellular telephone, use the &F5 command to configure the modem for cellular communications. &F5 sets the following configuration options:</p> <table><tr><th>AT Option</th><th>Command Value</th></tr><tr><td>Maximum Frame Size</td><td>\A4</td></tr><tr><td>Error Control Mode</td><td>\N4</td></tr><tr><td>Auto-Answer Rings</td><td>S0 = 3</td></tr><tr><td>No Answer Timeout</td><td>S7 = 120</td></tr><tr><td>No Carrier Disconnect</td><td>S10 = 100</td></tr><tr><td>V.32bis Train</td><td>S43 = 1</td></tr><tr><td>V.32bis Autorate</td><td>S76 = 3</td></tr><tr><td>V.42 ARQ Window Size</td><td>S89 = 9</td></tr><tr><td>Cellular Enhancements</td><td>S91 = 1</td></tr></table> <p>If your modem is attached to a normal dial telephone line but sometimes communicates with a modem that is attached to a cellular phone, use the &F6 command. &F6 (Cellular(PSTN)) sets the following configuration options:</p> <table><tr><th>AT Option</th><th>Command Value</th></tr><tr><td>Transmit Level</td><td>&I99</td></tr><tr><td>Error Control Mode</td><td>\N4</td></tr><tr><td>No Answer Timeout</td><td>S7 = 120</td></tr><tr><td>No Carrier Disconnect</td><td>S10 = 100</td></tr><tr><td>V.32bis Train</td><td>S43 = 1</td></tr><tr><td>V.42 ARQ Window Size</td><td>S89 = 9</td></tr><tr><td>Cellular Enhancements</td><td>S91 = 1</td></tr></table> <p>The &F0, &F3, &F5, and &F6 commands leave the modem in AT Command mode. The other commands place the modem into Dumb mode. The only way to return to AT command control is via the front panel.</p>	AT Option	Command Value	Maximum Frame Size	\A4	Error Control Mode	\N4	Auto-Answer Rings	S0 = 3	No Answer Timeout	S7 = 120	No Carrier Disconnect	S10 = 100	V.32bis Train	S43 = 1	V.32bis Autorate	S76 = 3	V.42 ARQ Window Size	S89 = 9	Cellular Enhancements	S91 = 1	AT Option	Command Value	Transmit Level	&I99	Error Control Mode	\N4	No Answer Timeout	S7 = 120	No Carrier Disconnect	S10 = 100	V.32bis Train	S43 = 1	V.42 ARQ Window Size	S89 = 9	Cellular Enhancements	S91 = 1	
AT Option	Command Value																																					
Maximum Frame Size	\A4																																					
Error Control Mode	\N4																																					
Auto-Answer Rings	S0 = 3																																					
No Answer Timeout	S7 = 120																																					
No Carrier Disconnect	S10 = 100																																					
V.32bis Train	S43 = 1																																					
V.32bis Autorate	S76 = 3																																					
V.42 ARQ Window Size	S89 = 9																																					
Cellular Enhancements	S91 = 1																																					
AT Option	Command Value																																					
Transmit Level	&I99																																					
Error Control Mode	\N4																																					
No Answer Timeout	S7 = 120																																					
No Carrier Disconnect	S10 = 100																																					
V.32bis Train	S43 = 1																																					
V.42 ARQ Window Size	S89 = 9																																					
Cellular Enhancements	S91 = 1																																					
&Gn	<p>V.22bis Guard Tone</p> <p>&G0 Disable.</p> <p>&G1 550 Hz.</p> <p>&G2 1800 Hz.</p>	Configure\Edit\Dial Line																																				

Table 14-1
(7 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch
&I	<p>Dial Transmit Level</p> <p>When Dial Transmit Level Type is set to Permissive, &In sets Dial Transmit Level to a value between –10 and –32 dBm. &I99 and &I100 cause the level to be varied automatically according to conditions for Enhanced Throughput Cellular (ETC) operation.</p> <p>&I10 –10 dBm &I11 –11 dBm &I32 –32 dBm</p> <p>&I99 Automatically adjusted according to the ETC1.0 specification. Use only with remote modems set to &I99, and limit the data rate to 4800 bps (S41 = 5). Set by &F6.</p> <p>&I100 Automatically adjusted according to the ETC1.1 specification.</p> <p>NOTE: &J0 overrides this command; &In overrides the &J0 command.</p>	Configure\Edit\Dial Line
&J n	<p>Dial Transmit Level Type</p> <p>&J0 Permissive (Approx. –9 dBm). &J1 Programmable</p> <p>NOTE: &Jn overrides the &In command.</p>	Configure\Edit\Dial Line
&L n	<p>Leased Mode</p> <p>&L0 Disables leased-line operation. &L1 2-wire originate leased-line operation. &L2 4-wire originate leased-line operation (Model 3810 and 3811 only). &L3 2-wire answer leased-line operation. &L4 4-wire answer leased-line operation (Model 3810 and 3811 only).</p> <p>The &L command will cause the modem to reset before entering or exiting Leased-Line mode. Therefore, it must be entered as the last command in an initialization string.</p>	Configure\Edit\Leased Line

Table 14-1
(8 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch
&Mn and &Qn	<p>Async/Sync Mode and DTE Dialer Type</p> <p>&M0, &Q0 Modem operates in Asynchronous mode and uses AT Command protocol.</p> <p>&M1, &Q1 Modem operates in Synchronous mode and uses AT Command protocol.</p> <p>&M2, &Q2 Modem operates in Synchronous mode and dials telephone number stored in directory location 1 when DTR signal turns Off and then ON.</p> <p>&M3, &Q3 Modem operates in Synchronous mode and uses AT Command protocol.</p> <p>&Q4 Modem operates in Asynchronous mode and uses AT Command protocol; Hayes AutoSync is enabled.</p> <p>&M231, &Q231 Modem operates in Asynchronous mode; the DTE Dialer Type is disabled.</p> <p>&M232, &Q232 Modem operates in Asynchronous mode; V.25bis Async dialing is enabled.</p> <p>&M233, &Q233 Modem operates in Synchronous mode; V.25bis Bisync dialing is enabled.</p> <p>&M234, &Q234 Modem operates in Synchronous mode; V.25bis HDLC dialing is enabled.</p> <p>&M235, &Q235 Modem operates in Asynchronous mode; AT&T Exclusive dialing is enabled.</p> <p>&M236, &Q236 Modem operates in Synchronous mode; the DTE Dialer Type is disabled.</p> <p>The &M2, &Q2, &M231, &Q231, &M236, and &Q236 commands disable the use of AT commands and force the modem into Dumb mode. The only way to gain control of the modem is the front panel.</p>	Configure\Edit\DTE Dialer
&Rn	<p>RTS Action</p> <p>&R0 Standard RS232.</p> <p>&R1 Ignores RTS.</p> <p>&R2 Simulated Control Carrier.</p>	Configure\Edit\DTE Interface
&Sn	<p>DSR Control</p> <p>&S0 Forced On.</p> <p>&S1 Standard RS232.</p> <p>&S2 Wink When Disconnect.</p> <p>&S3 Follows DTR.</p> <p>&S4 On Early.</p> <p>&S5 Delay to DTE.</p> <p>&S6 Dial Backup Toggle.</p>	Configure\Edit\DTE Interface

Table 14-1
(9 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch
&Tn	Tests &T0 Abort. Stops any test in progress. &T1 Local Analog Loop. &T2 Pattern. Transmits and receives a 511 Bit Error Rate Test (BERT). &T3 Local Digital Loopback test. &T4 Enables Receive Remote Loopback Response configuration option. &T5 Disables Receive Remote Loopback Response configuration option. &T6 Remote Digital Loopback test. &T7 Remote Digital Loopback with Pattern. &T8 Local Loopback with Pattern. &T9 Self-Test.	Test &T4 and &T5: Configure\Edit\Tests
&Vn	View Configuration Options Displays each configuration group within the Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, and Customer 2 configuration areas as well as the telephone numbers stores in directory locations 1–10. The output of the &V command, trapped by communications software and printed, can be used as a configuration worksheet for a modem or network. &V0 Active (Operating) configuration options. &V1 Active (Saved) configuration options. &V2 Customer 1 configuration options. &V3 Customer 2 configuration options. &V4 Directory locations 1–10.	None
&Wn	Write (Save to Memory) Saves the current configuration options in Active (Operating) to one of three configuration areas: &W0 Saved to Active(Save). &W1 Saved to Customer 1. &W2 Saved to Customer 2.	Configure\Save
&Xn	Transmit Clock Source &X0 Internal. Modem provides transmit clock source for synchronous data (Pin 15). &X1 External. Modem derives external transmit clock source provided on Pin 24 for synchronous data. &X2 Receive Clock Loop. Modem derives transmit clock source from receive signal for synchronous data (Pin 17).	Configure\Edit\DTE Interface
&Zn=x	Store Telephone Numbers Modem saves the telephone numbers and dial command modifiers (if any) entered for x (up to 40 characters in length) in Directory Location n (1–10). For example, the command AT&Z1 = 5551234 stores the telephone number 555-1234 into directory location 1. To clear a telephone number from a memory location, issue the &Zn = x command without entering a telephone number.	Call Setup\Change Directory

Table 14-1
(10 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch																																
\An	Maximum Frame Size \A0 64 \A1 128 \A2 192 \A3 256 \A4 32 \A5 16	Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer																																
\Cn	Error Control Negotiate Buffer \C0 Disable. \C1 Enable. \C2 Disables and switches modem to Buffer mode.	Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer																																
\Dn	CTS Control \D0 Forced On. Forces CTS to always ON. \D1 Standard RS232. \D2 Wink When Disconnect. CTS is turned Off for 1 to 2 seconds upon a disconnect. \D3 Follows DTR. The state of CTS follows the state of DTR.	Configure\Edit\DTE Interface																																
\Gn	Modem to Modem Flow Control \G0 Disable. \G1 Enable.	Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer																																
\Kn	Break Buffer Control, Send Break Control, Break Forces Escape <table border="1"><thead><tr><th></th><th><i>Break Buffer Control</i></th><th><i>Send Break Control</i></th><th><i>Break Forces Escape</i></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>\K0</td><td>Discard Data</td><td>Break First</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>\K1</td><td>Discard Data</td><td>Break First</td><td>Disable</td></tr><tr><td>\K2</td><td>Keep Data</td><td>Break First</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>\K3</td><td>Keep Data</td><td>Break First</td><td>Disable</td></tr><tr><td>\K4</td><td>Keep Data</td><td>Data First</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>\K5</td><td>Keep Data</td><td>Data First</td><td>Disable</td></tr><tr><td>\K6</td><td>Discard Break</td><td>Not Applic.</td><td>Disable</td></tr></tbody></table>		<i>Break Buffer Control</i>	<i>Send Break Control</i>	<i>Break Forces Escape</i>	\K0	Discard Data	Break First	Enable	\K1	Discard Data	Break First	Disable	\K2	Keep Data	Break First	Enable	\K3	Keep Data	Break First	Disable	\K4	Keep Data	Data First	Enable	\K5	Keep Data	Data First	Disable	\K6	Discard Break	Not Applic.	Disable	Break Buffer Control: Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer Send Break Control: Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer Break Forces Escape: Configure\Edit\DTE Dialer
	<i>Break Buffer Control</i>	<i>Send Break Control</i>	<i>Break Forces Escape</i>																															
\K0	Discard Data	Break First	Enable																															
\K1	Discard Data	Break First	Disable																															
\K2	Keep Data	Break First	Enable																															
\K3	Keep Data	Break First	Disable																															
\K4	Keep Data	Data First	Enable																															
\K5	Keep Data	Data First	Disable																															
\K6	Discard Break	Not Applic.	Disable																															
\Nn	Error Control Mode \N0 Buffer Mode. \N1 Direct Mode. \N2 MNP or Disconnect. \N3 MNP or Buffer. \N4 V.42/MNP or Disconnect. \N5 V.42/MNP or Buffer. \N6 LAPM or Disconnect. \N7 LAPM or Buffer.	Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer																																

Table 14-1
(11 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch																								
\Qn	Flow Control of DTE, Flow Control of Modem <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th><th><i>Flow Control of DTE</i></th><th><i>Flow Control of Modem</i></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>\Q0</td><td>Disable</td><td>Disable</td></tr> <tr> <td>\Q1</td><td>XON/XOFF</td><td>XON/XOFF</td></tr> <tr> <td>\Q2</td><td>CTS to DTE</td><td>Disable</td></tr> <tr> <td>\Q3</td><td>CTS to DTE</td><td>RTS to Mdm</td></tr> <tr> <td>\Q4</td><td>XON/XOFF</td><td>Disable</td></tr> <tr> <td>\Q5</td><td>Disable</td><td>XON/XOFF</td></tr> <tr> <td>\Q6</td><td>Disable</td><td>RTS to Mdm</td></tr> </tbody> </table>		<i>Flow Control of DTE</i>	<i>Flow Control of Modem</i>	\Q0	Disable	Disable	\Q1	XON/XOFF	XON/XOFF	\Q2	CTS to DTE	Disable	\Q3	CTS to DTE	RTS to Mdm	\Q4	XON/XOFF	Disable	\Q5	Disable	XON/XOFF	\Q6	Disable	RTS to Mdm	Configure/Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer
	<i>Flow Control of DTE</i>	<i>Flow Control of Modem</i>																								
\Q0	Disable	Disable																								
\Q1	XON/XOFF	XON/XOFF																								
\Q2	CTS to DTE	Disable																								
\Q3	CTS to DTE	RTS to Mdm																								
\Q4	XON/XOFF	Disable																								
\Q5	Disable	XON/XOFF																								
\Q6	Disable	RTS to Mdm																								
\Tn	No Data Disconnect Timer \T0 Disable. \Tn Where <i>n</i> is a value from 1 to 255 in 1-minute increments.	Configure/Edit/Line Dialer																								
\Xn	XON/XOFF Passthrough Flow Control \X0 Disable. \X1 Enable.	Configure/Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer																								
%An	Error Control Fallback Character %An Where <i>n</i> is an ASCII value from 0 to 127. Factory default is 013 ASCII.	Configure/Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer																								
%Bn	Modulation and Data Rate Sets the modulation and maximum VF rate. The %B300 and %B1200 commands work in conjunction with the B (CCITT/ Bell Mode) command to determine modulation. %B19200 V.32terbo, maximum rate 19,200 bps %B16800 V.32terbo, maximum rate 16,800 bps %B14400 V.32bis, maximum rate 14,400 bps %B12000 V.32bis, maximum rate 12,000 bps %B9600 V.32bis/V.32, maximum rate 9600 bps %B7200 V.32bis, maximum rate 7200 bps %B4800 V.32bis/V.32, maximum rate 4800 bps %B2400 V.22bis. maximum rate 2400 bps %B1200 V.22 or Bell 212A, maximum rate 1200 bps %B300 V.21 or Bell 103, maximum rate 300 bps																									

**Table 14-1
(12 of 12)
3800 Series AT Commands**

AT Command	Description	Front Panel Branch																																				
%Bn (cont'd)	<p>Modulation and Data Rate can also be set using S-register S41. The following table shows the equivalent values of S41 for each %Bn value, and, where applicable, %Bn in combination with Bn.</p> <table><tr><td>S41 = 20</td><td>%B19200</td><td>V.32terbo, 19,200 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 21</td><td>%B16800</td><td>V.32terbo, 16,800 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 1</td><td>%B14400</td><td>V.32bis, 14,400 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 2</td><td>%B12000</td><td>V.32bis, 12,000 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 3</td><td>%B9600</td><td>V.32bis/V.32, 9600 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 4</td><td>%B7200</td><td>V.32bis, 7200 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 5</td><td>%B4800</td><td>V.32bis/V.32, 4800 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 6</td><td>%B2400</td><td>V.22bis. 2400 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 7</td><td>%B1200/B0</td><td>V.22, 1200 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 8</td><td>%B1200/B1</td><td>Bell 212A, 1200 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 10</td><td>%B300/B0</td><td>V.21, 300 bps</td></tr><tr><td>S41 = 11</td><td>%B300/B1</td><td>Bell 103J, 300 bps</td></tr></table> <p>The factory default is %B19200.</p>	S41 = 20	%B19200	V.32terbo, 19,200 bps	S41 = 21	%B16800	V.32terbo, 16,800 bps	S41 = 1	%B14400	V.32bis, 14,400 bps	S41 = 2	%B12000	V.32bis, 12,000 bps	S41 = 3	%B9600	V.32bis/V.32, 9600 bps	S41 = 4	%B7200	V.32bis, 7200 bps	S41 = 5	%B4800	V.32bis/V.32, 4800 bps	S41 = 6	%B2400	V.22bis. 2400 bps	S41 = 7	%B1200/B0	V.22, 1200 bps	S41 = 8	%B1200/B1	Bell 212A, 1200 bps	S41 = 10	%B300/B0	V.21, 300 bps	S41 = 11	%B300/B1	Bell 103J, 300 bps	
S41 = 20	%B19200	V.32terbo, 19,200 bps																																				
S41 = 21	%B16800	V.32terbo, 16,800 bps																																				
S41 = 1	%B14400	V.32bis, 14,400 bps																																				
S41 = 2	%B12000	V.32bis, 12,000 bps																																				
S41 = 3	%B9600	V.32bis/V.32, 9600 bps																																				
S41 = 4	%B7200	V.32bis, 7200 bps																																				
S41 = 5	%B4800	V.32bis/V.32, 4800 bps																																				
S41 = 6	%B2400	V.22bis. 2400 bps																																				
S41 = 7	%B1200/B0	V.22, 1200 bps																																				
S41 = 8	%B1200/B1	Bell 212A, 1200 bps																																				
S41 = 10	%B300/B0	V.21, 300 bps																																				
S41 = 11	%B300/B1	Bell 103J, 300 bps																																				
%Cn	<p>MNP5 Data Compression</p> <p>%C0 Disable.</p> <p>%C1 Enable.</p>	Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer																																				
%Rn	<p>DTE Rate</p> <p>Sets the rate at which data is passed between the modem and the DTE. %R must be the last command on the command line. Setting the DTE rate with the %R command does not turn off autobauding.</p> <table><tr><td>%R115200</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 115,200 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R76800</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 76,800 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R57600</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 57,600 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R38400</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 38,400 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R19200</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 19,200 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R14400</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 14,400 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R9600</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 9600 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R7200</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 7200 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R4800</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 4800 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R2400</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 2400 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R1200</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 1200 bps.</td></tr><tr><td>%R300</td><td>Sets the DTE rate to 300 bps.</td></tr></table>	%R115200	Sets the DTE rate to 115,200 bps.	%R76800	Sets the DTE rate to 76,800 bps.	%R57600	Sets the DTE rate to 57,600 bps.	%R38400	Sets the DTE rate to 38,400 bps.	%R19200	Sets the DTE rate to 19,200 bps.	%R14400	Sets the DTE rate to 14,400 bps.	%R9600	Sets the DTE rate to 9600 bps.	%R7200	Sets the DTE rate to 7200 bps.	%R4800	Sets the DTE rate to 4800 bps.	%R2400	Sets the DTE rate to 2400 bps.	%R1200	Sets the DTE rate to 1200 bps.	%R300	Sets the DTE rate to 300 bps.	Configure\Edit\ DTE Interface												
%R115200	Sets the DTE rate to 115,200 bps.																																					
%R76800	Sets the DTE rate to 76,800 bps.																																					
%R57600	Sets the DTE rate to 57,600 bps.																																					
%R38400	Sets the DTE rate to 38,400 bps.																																					
%R19200	Sets the DTE rate to 19,200 bps.																																					
%R14400	Sets the DTE rate to 14,400 bps.																																					
%R9600	Sets the DTE rate to 9600 bps.																																					
%R7200	Sets the DTE rate to 7200 bps.																																					
%R4800	Sets the DTE rate to 4800 bps.																																					
%R2400	Sets the DTE rate to 2400 bps.																																					
%R1200	Sets the DTE rate to 1200 bps.																																					
%R300	Sets the DTE rate to 300 bps.																																					
"Hn	<p>V.42bis Data Compression</p> <p>"H0 Disable.</p> <p>"H1 Transmit only.</p> <p>"H2 Receive only.</p> <p>"H3 Transmit and Receive.</p>	Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer																																				

S-Register List

S-registers affect the operating parameters of the 3800 Series modems. S-registers are only applicable when the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT. (See &Mn command.)

Table 14-2 lists all S-registers supported by the 3800 Series modems. The first column lists the S-register. The second column lists all possible values for that register. The third column lists the key sequence used to enter the equivalent from the front panel. Use this column to reference commands in Chapter 9 if further description is necessary.

S-Register Format

S-registers can be displayed and/or modified when the modem is in Command mode. To display the value of an S-register, issue the following command:

TYPE: ATSn?

Where: *n* is the register number

PRESS: Enter

To modify the value of an S-register, issue the following command:

TYPE: ATSn=*r*

Where: *n* is the register number, and *r* is the new value

PRESS: Enter

In Table 14-2, the value for *n* is listed in the S-register column, and the value for *r* is listed in the Description column.

Table 14-2
(1 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S0	Auto-Answer Ring Number Register determines number of rings the modem will count before automatically answering a call. Enter zero (0) if you do not want the modem to automatically answer any calls. Otherwise, enter a value from 1 to 255 for the number of rings to count before answering. Factory setting is 1.	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer
S2	AT Escape Character Register determines ASCII value used for escape sequence to enter Command mode from Data mode. Enter a value from 1 to 127 for the escape character. Any value greater than 127 causes the modem to disable the escape sequence. When the escape sequence is disabled, the modem cannot return to Command mode until the call is disconnected. Factory setting is 43 (+ key).	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
S3	Carriage Return Character Register determines ASCII value used as the carriage return (Return key). This character is used to end command lines and result codes. Enter a value from 0 to 127 for the command end character. Factory setting is 13 (carriage return key). NOTE: The &W command used to save this change must be on a separate line. This ensures both that the change is intentional, and that the DTE can enter the new character.	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
S4	Line Feed Character Register determines ASCII value used as the line feed character. Enter a value from 0 to 127 for the line feed character. Factory setting is 10 (ASCII carriage return or line feed).	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
S5	Backspace Character Register determines ASCII value used as the backspace (Backspace key). This character moves the cursor to the left and erases the previous character. Enter a value from 0 to 127. Factory setting is 08 (backspace key).	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
S6	Blind Dial Pause Register determines how long (in seconds) the modem waits after going off-hook before dialing a telephone number if using result code X0, X1, or X3. Enter a value from 2 to 255 seconds. Factory setting is 2 seconds.	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer
S7	No Answer Timeout Register determines how long (in seconds) an originating modem waits before abandoning a call when no answer tone is received. Enter a value from 1 to 255 seconds. Factory setting is 45 seconds.	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer

Table 14-2
(2 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S8	“,” Pause Time for the Dial Modifier Register determines how long (in seconds) the modem pauses when it encounters a comma (,) in the Dial command string. Enter a value from 0 to 255 seconds. Factory setting is 2 seconds.	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer
S10	No Carrier Disconnect Register determines how long (in tenths of seconds) the modem allows the carrier signal to be off before disconnecting the call. Enter a value from 0 to 254 in 0.1 second increments. (A value of 255 disables this register.) Factory setting is 20 (2 seconds).	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer
S12	Escape Guard Time Register sets the value (in 20-millisecond increments) for the required pause before and after the escape sequence is issued. The guard time prevents the modem from interpreting data as the escape sequence characters. Enter a value from 0 to 255 in 20-millisecond increments. For example, the factory setting of 50 equals 1000 milliseconds or one second. Factory setting is 50 (1 second).	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
S18	Test Timeout Register sets the duration (in seconds) for the modem tests. This automatically cancels any test in progress after the time of this register expires. Any test can be manually canceled by issuing the escape sequence (+++) followed by the &T0 command. Enter a value from 0 to 255 seconds. (A value of 0 disables this register.) Factory setting is Disable (0).	Configure>Edit\Tests
S26	RTS-to-CTS Delay Register sets the length of time (in 10-millisecond increments) the modem waits after receiving RTS before issuing CTS to the DTE. Enter a value from 0 to 255. Factory setting is 0 milliseconds.	Configure>Edit\DTE Interface
S34	1800 Hz Training Tone This configuration option is for communication with certain modems that do not comply with the V.32 standard. When 1800 Hz Training Tone is enabled, a short burst of 1800 Hz (AC) tone is sent to the answering modem to prompt it to answer. This is not required for V.32-compliant modems. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.	Configure>Edit\Leased Line

Table 14-2
(3 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S35	<p>Auto Redial (Leased Line) Auto Redial allows repeated automatic dial backup attempts by specifying the range of Directory Locations that can be tried. A redial attempt is made in response to a bad phone number, a busy signal, no answer, or no quiet answer. The modem must be in Originate mode. On leased lines with dial backup, Auto Redial works in conjunction with the Bad Lines Auto Originate and Rate Auto Originate options. Register has the following values:</p> <p>S35 = 0 Use Directory Location 1 S35 = 1 Use Directory Locations 1–2 S35 = 2 Use Directory Locations 1–3 S35 = 3 Use Directory Locations 1–4 S35 = 9 Use Directory Locations 1–10</p> <p>NOTE: The modem must be in Originate mode to perform an automatic dial backup.</p>	Configure>Edit\Leased Line (Auto Redial)
S36	<p>Rate Auto Originate Initiates a dial backup call, using the phone number in directory location 1, when the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to or below a certain speed. Register has the following values:</p> <p>S36 = 0 Disable S36 = 1 On fallback to 4800 S36 = 2 On fallback to 7200 S36 = 3 On fallback to 9600 S36 = 4 On fallback to 12,000 S36 = 5 On fallback to 14,400 S36 = 6 On fallback to 16,800</p> <p>NOTE: Rate Auto-Originate is valid only when V.32bis Autorate is enabled (S76 = 0).</p>	Configure>Edit\Leased Line
S37	<p>Auto Redial (DTR) Auto Redial allows repeated automatic dial backup attempts by specifying the range of Directory Locations that can be tried. A redial attempt is made in response to a bad phone number, a busy signal, no answer, or no quiet answer. The modem must be in Originate mode. When DTE Dialer Type is DTR=Dtrs, Auto Redial works in conjunction with the DTR Cont Repeat (S38) configuration option. Register has the following values:</p> <p>S37 = 0 Use Directory Location 1 S37 = 1 Use Directory Locations 1–2 S37 = 2 Use Directory Locations 1–3 S37 = 3 Use Directory Locations 1–4 S37 = 9 Use Directory Locations 1–10</p> <p>NOTE: The modem must be in Originate mode to perform an automatic dial backup.</p>	Configure>Edit\Line_Dialer (DTR Auto Redial)

Table 14-2
(4 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S38	<p>DTR Cont Repeat Determines whether automatic dialing of dial backup directory locations will be repeated continuously, or halted after the first pass. Regardless of the setting of S38, dialing is locked out after ten failed attempts to connect to the same number. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.</p>	Configure\Edit\DTE_Dialer
S39	<p>Receive Buffer Disconnect Delay Determines the maximum amount of time the modem can continue to send data in its Receive Buffer to the DTE after the modem is commanded by the DTE to disconnect, or after the modem detects a line disconnect. Register has the following values: S39 = 0 Disable (Immediate disconnect) S39 = 1 1 second S39 = 2 2 seconds S39 = 255 255 seconds Factory setting is Disable (0).</p>	Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer
S40	<p>Auto Make Busy Register determines if the modem goes off-hook under certain conditions. This register should only be enabled when the modem is located behind a user's Private Branch Exchange (PBX). This register is only valid for Model 3811 modems. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.</p>	Configure\Edit\Line Dialer
S41	<p>Dial-Line Rate Register determines the modem's data rate and modulation scheme for operation on dial lines. Register has the following values: 1 = 4400 (V.32bis) 2 = 12,000 (V.32bis) 3 = 9600 (V.32bis/V.32) 4 = 7200 (V.32bis) 5 = 4800 (V.32bis/V.32) 6 = 2400 (V.22bis) 7 = 1200 (V.22) 8 = 1200 (212A) 10 = 0-300 (V21) 11 = 0-300 (103J) 20 = 19,200 (V.32terbo) 21 = 16,800 (V.32terbo) Factory setting is 19,200 (V.32terbo).</p>	Configure\Edit\Dial Line

Table 14-2
(5 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S43	V.32bis Train Register controls the modem's train time for V.32bis/V.32 mode. Register has the following values: 0 = Long 1 = Short Factory setting is Long.	Configure>Edit\Dial Line
S44	Leased-Line Rate Register determines the modem's data rate and modulation scheme for operation on either 2-wire or 4-wire leased lines in either Answer or Originate mode. Register has the following values: 0, 1 = 14,400 (V.32bis) 2 = 12,000 (V.32bis) 3 = 9600 (V.32bis) 4 = 7200 (V.32bis) 5 = 4800 (V.32bis) 6 = 2400 (V.22bis) 18 = 19,200 (V.32terbo) 19 = 16,800 (V.32terbo) Factory setting is 19,200 (V.32terbo).	Configure>Edit\Leased Line
S45	Leased TX Level Register determines the modem's transmit power output level over leased lines. Enter a value from 0 to 15 dBm. Factory setting is 0 dBm.	Configure>Edit\Leased Line
S46	Bad Lines Auto Originate Register determines if the modem performs an automatic dial backup if the leased lines fail. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = 30 seconds 2 = 20 seconds 3 = 60 seconds 4 = 90 seconds 5 = 120 seconds . . 21 = 600 seconds Factory setting is Disable. Note that the S46 = 2 command has an effect that is out of sequence with the other values.	Configure>Edit\Leased Line

Table 14-2
(6 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S47	Auto Dial Standby Register determines if the modem performs an automatic dial standby if in Dial Backup mode. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = 15 minutes 2 = 1 hour 3 = 4 hours 255 = Test(2min) Factory setting is Disable.	Configure>Edit\Leased Line
S48	Leased-Line Carrier On Level Register determines if the modem disconnects if the carrier signal on leased lines falls below –26 dBm or –43 dBm. Register has the following values: 0 = –43 dBm 1 = –26 dBm Factory setting is –43 dBm.	Configure>Edit\Leased Line
S49	Transmit Buffer Disconnect Delay Determines the maximum amount of time the modem can continue to send data in its Transmit Buffer to the remote modem after it is commanded by the DTE to disconnect. Register has the following values: S49 = 0 Disable (Immediate disconnect) S49 = 1 1 second S49 = 2 2 seconds • • • • S49 = 255 255 seconds Factory setting is 10 seconds.	Configure>Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer
S51	DTE RL (CT140) Register determines if the modem performs a remote digital loopback if it receives a CT140 signal from the DTE. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.	Configure>Edit\Tests
S52	DTE LL (CT141) Register determines if the modem performs a local analog loopback if it receives a CT141 signal from the DTE. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.	Configure>Edit\Tests

Table 14-2
(7 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S53	V.54 Address Identifies the address of the modem to be placed in a loopback test. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1–34 = Modem address Factory setting is Disable.	Configure>Edit\Tests
S54	V.54 Device Type Identifies where the modem is physically located in the network. Register has the following values: 0 = Peripheral 1 = Intermediate Factory setting is Peripheral.	Configure>Edit\Tests
S55	Access From Remote Register determines if a modem's DCP can be accessed by a remote modem. Register has the following values: 0 = Enable 1 = Disable Factory setting is Enable.	Configure>Edit\Misc
S56	Remote Access Password Register allows entry of the first pair (leftmost) of digits of a remote access password. Any value from 00 to 99 is valid. For example, if the remote access password is 12345678, then S56 = 1 and 2.	Configure>Edit\Misc
S57	Remote Access Password Register allows entry of the second pair of digits of a remote access password. Any value from 00 to 99 is valid.	Configure>Edit\Misc
S58	Remote Access Password Register allows entry of the third pair of digits of a remote access password. Any value from 00 to 99 is valid.	Configure>Edit\Misc
S59	Remote Access Password Register allows entry of the fourth pair (rightmost) of digits of a remote access password. Any value from 00 to 99 is valid.	Configure>Edit\Misc
S61	CT111 Rate Control Register determines if CT111 Rate is disabled, set for Fallback 1 or Fallback 2. CT111 Rate allows the DTE to control modem rate via Pin 23 of the EIA-232-D interface. This configuration option determines the effect of the DTE Rate Control signal. It is only valid in Async Direct mode and Synchronous mode. For proper operation, disable the V32bis Autorate and V32bis Automode configuration options. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Fallback 1 2 = Fallback 2 Factory setting is Disable.	Configure>Edit\DTE Interface

Table 14-2
(8 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S62	V.25bis Coding Register identifies to the modem the type of coding used by the DTE while in V.25bis mode. Register has the following values: 0 = ASCII 1 = EBCDIC Factory setting is ASCII.	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
S63	V.25bis Idle Character Register identifies to the modem the type of idle fill used by the DTE while in V.25bis mode. Register has the following values: 0 = Mark 1 = Flag Factory setting is Mark.	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
S64	V.25bis New Line Character Register identifies to the modem the type of line terminator used by the DTE while in V.25bis mode. Register has the following values: 0 = Carriage Return and Line Feed 1 = Carriage Return 2 = Line Feed Factory setting is carriage return and line feed (CR + LF).	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
S65	Line Current Disconnect Register determines if the modem disconnects if an 8-millisecond or 90-millisecond interruption in loop current occurs. Register has the following values: 0 = Enable (8msec) 1 = Enable (90msec) 2 = Disable Factory setting is Enable (8msec).	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer
S66	NMS Call Messages Register determines if the modem sends information regarding status (Call Progress) and/or sends summarized call statistics (Call Connect) to the network management system (COMSPHERE 6700 Series NMS). Register has the following values: 0 = Call Connect & Progress 1 = Disable 2 = Call Connect Only 3 = Call Progress Only Factory setting is Call Connect & Progress.	Configure>Edit\Misc
S67	Directory Location 1 Callback Register determines if the modem uses the single number callback function. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.	Configure>Edit\Misc

Table 14-2
(9 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S69	Make Busy Via DTR Register determines if the modem goes off-hook (busy) when DTR is Off. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer
S74	Network Position Identification Register identifies each modem as either a control or tributary modem. Register has the following values: 0 = Tributary 1 = Control Factory setting is Tributary.	Configure>Edit\Misc
S75	Network Management Address Register determines the modem's network address. This address is used when accessing the modem from the NMS. Enter a value from 0 (network address 001) to 255 (network address 256). Factory setting is 255.	Configure>Edit\Dial
S76	V.32bis Autorate (Dial Line) Register determines if Autorating is used on dial lines when connected in V.32bis mode. Register has the following values: 0 = Enable 1 = Disable 2 = Start at 4800 bps 3 = Start at 9600 bps Factory setting is Enable.	Configure>Edit\Dial Line
S77	DTR Alarm Reporting Register determines whether an alarm is sent to the 6800 Series Network Management System controller when the DTR signal has been off for more than 10 seconds. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.	Configure>Edit\Misc
S78	V.32bis Automode (Dial Line) Register allows the modem (when operating on dial lines) to automatically detect and connect to the remote modem's modulation scheme. If the modem is in a modem pool attached to a System 85 Private Branch Exchange (PBX), S78 should be set to 2. This modifies parameters used during connection to the PBX. Register has the following values: 0 = Enable 1 = Disable 2 = System 85 Factory setting is Enable.	Configure>Edit\Dial Line

Table 14-2
(10 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S80	<p>No Data Disconnect Trigger Signal Register determines whether Pin 2 (transmit data) or Pin 3 (receive data) of the modem's RS-232 serial interface is monitored so that the modem can disconnect the call if there is no activity for a certain period. (See the \T command.) Register has the following values: 0 = Transmit or Receive 1 = Transmit only 2 = Receive only 3 = Transmit and Receive Factory setting is 3.</p>	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer
S82	<p>V.32bis Autorate (Leased Line) Register determines if Autorating is used on leased lines when connected in V.32bis mode. Register has the following values: 0 = Enable 1 = Disable Factory setting is Enable.</p>	Configure>Edit\Leased Line
S83	<p>MI/MIC Dialing Register determines if MI/MIC control leads can be used to force the modem into the originate handshake after first dialing a call. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.</p>	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer
S84	<p>AT Command Mode Register determines how the modem responds to valid and invalid AT commands. Register has the following values: 0 = Normal 1 = No ERROR 2 = No Strap or ERROR Factory setting is Normal.</p>	Configure>Edit\DTE Dialer
S85	<p>Fast Disconnect Register allows the modem to disconnect immediately after receiving a disconnect command from a local DTE or its own diagnostic control panel. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.</p>	Configure>Edit\Line Dialer

Table 14-2
(11 of 11)
3800 Series S-Registers

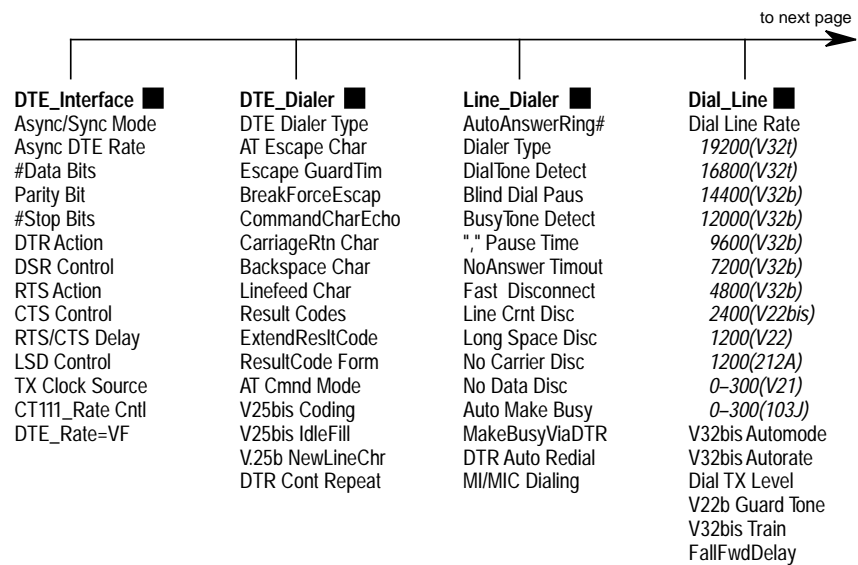
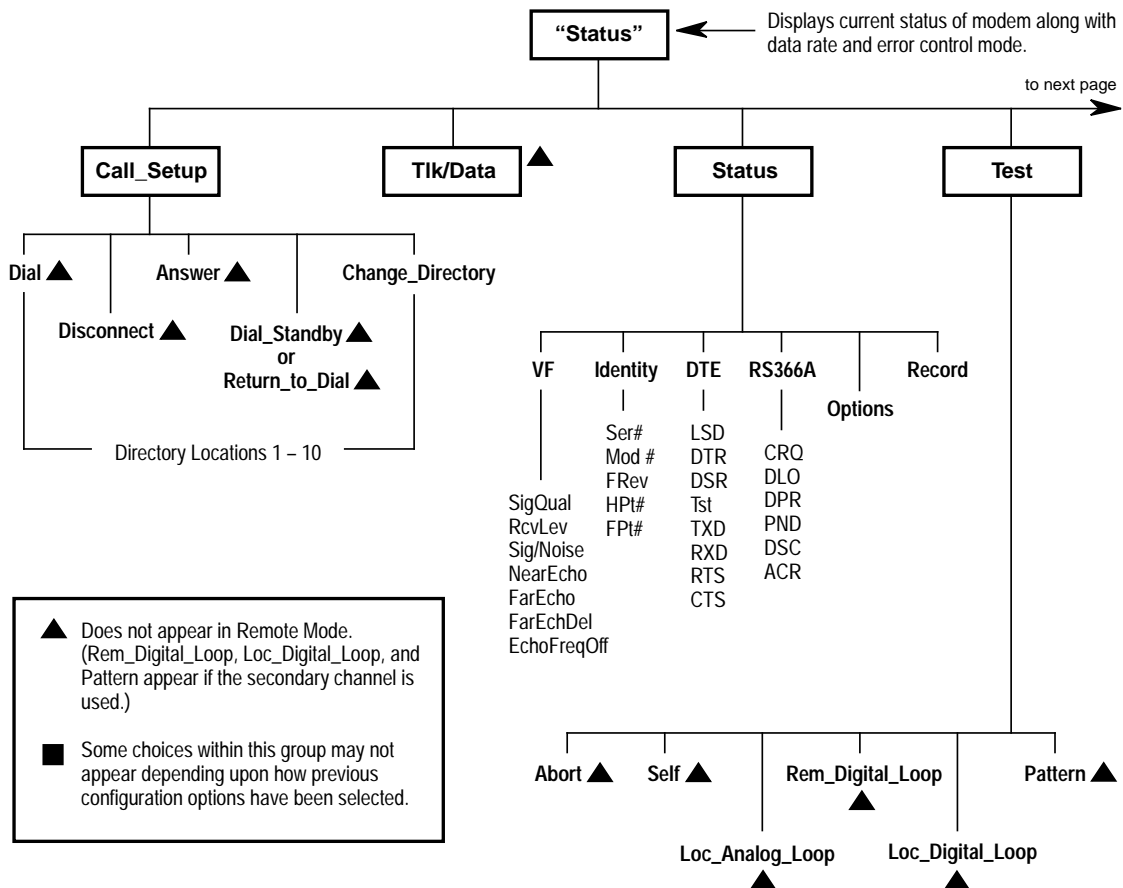
S-Register	Description	Front Panel Branch
S88	<p>Straps When Disconnected Register determines whether the Active(Operating) area is reloaded upon a disconnect. Register has the following values: 0 (or 231) = No Change 1 (or 232) = Reload 2 (or 233) = Reload with no AT Change Factory setting is No Change.</p>	Configure\Edit\V.42/MNP/Buffer
S89	<p>V.42 ARQ Window Size Increase Register allows the V.42 Automatic Request for Transmission (ARQ) window size to be set to a value from 6 to 15 frames to accommodate satellite delays. Register has the following values: 0 for 6 frames (default) 1 for 7 frames 2 for 8 frames 3 for 9 frames • • • • 9 for 15 frames This command applies only to connections made using V.42bis data compression or V.42 error control. Factory setting is 6 frames.</p>	None
S90	<p>DTE Rate = VF Rate Register forces the DTE (computer) data rate to be equal to the VF (telephone line) data rate. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.</p>	Configure\Edit\Misc
S91	<p>Cellular Enhancements Register determines whether parameters are set to improve performance over a cellular link. Should be enabled when the remote modem is using a cellular connection. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.</p>	Configure\Edit\Misc
S93	<p>RJ11 Cellular Adapt Register controls support for an RJ11 connection, including generation of the ETC 1.1 Calling Tone during call origination. Register has the following values: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable Factory setting is Disable.</p>	Configure\Edit\Misc

Menu Tree **A**

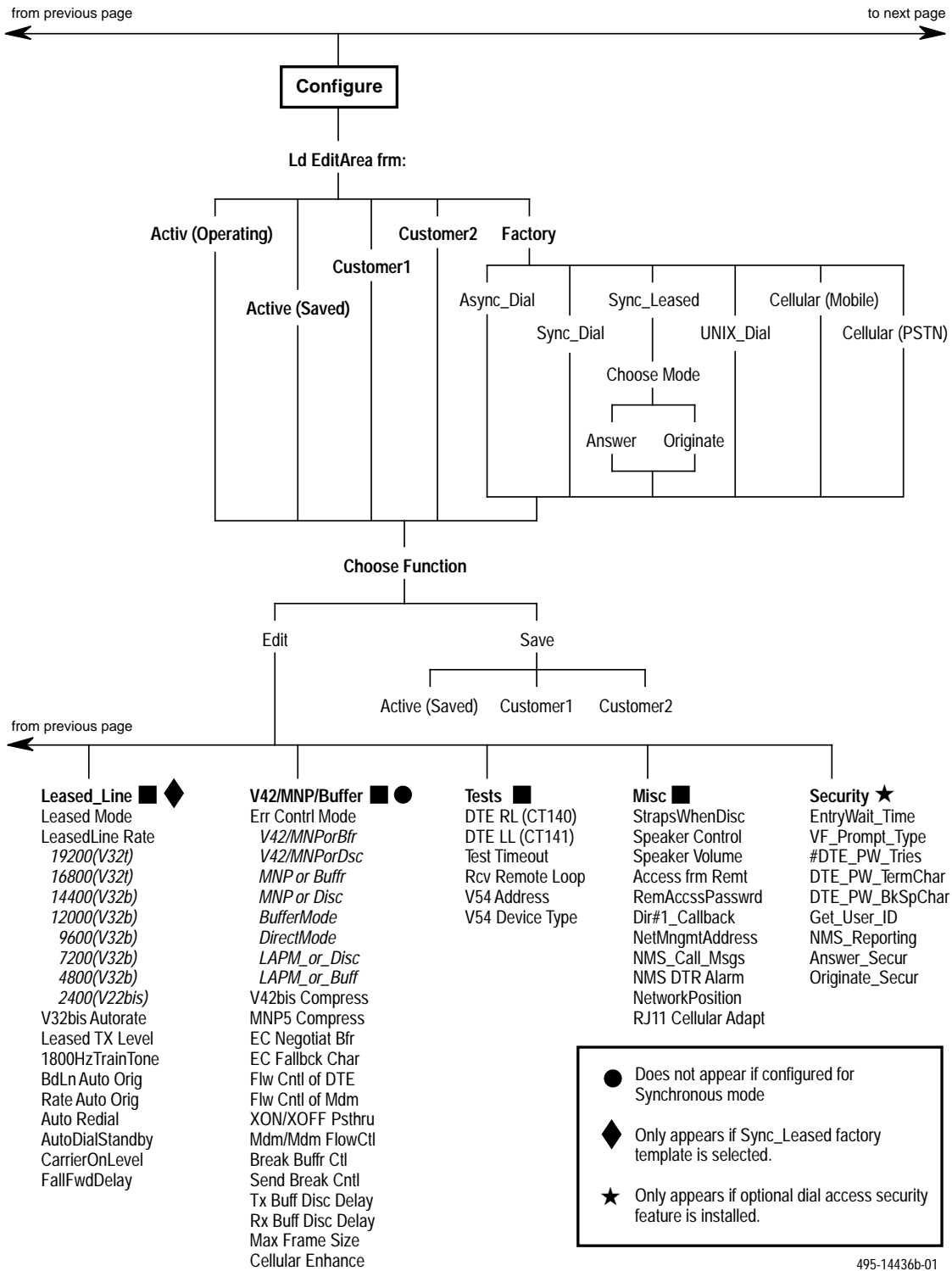
Overview	A-1
----------------	-----

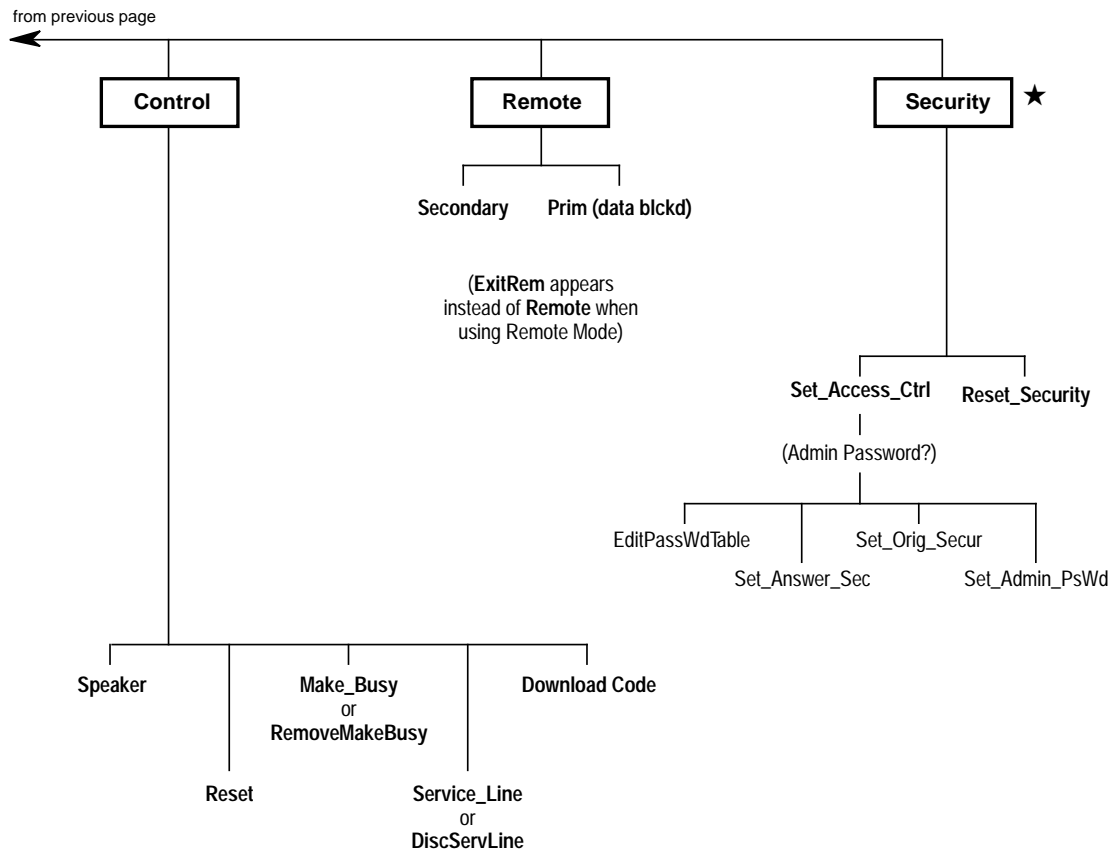
Overview

The following pages provide graphic representations of the general menu structure of the front panel or SDCP displays. The model, installed features, and configuration options all may affect what is actually displayed at each level of the menus.



495-14436a-01





★ Only appears if optional dial access security feature is installed.

495-14436c-01

Result Codes B

**Table B-1
(1 of 2)
Result Codes**

Numbers (1)	Numbers (2)	Word	Description
0	0	OK	Command executed
1	1	CONNECT	Modem connected to line
2	2	RING	Modem receiving a ring voltage from the VF line
3	3	NO CARRIER	Modem lost or does not detect carrier signal, or does not detect answer tone
4	4	ERROR	Invalid command
5	5	CONNECT 1200*	Connection at 1200 bps
6	6	NO DIALTONE*	No dial tone detected
7	7	BUSY*	Busy or trunk busy signal detected
8	8	NO ANSWER*	No "quiet" answer (@)
10	10	CONNECT 2400*	Connection at 2400 bps
11	11	CONNECT 4800*	Connection at 4800 bps
12	12	CONNECT 9600*	Connection at 9600 bps
13	16	CONNECT 12000*	Connection at 12,000 bps
14	13	CONNECT 14400*	Connection at 14,400 bps
15	14	CONNECT 19200**	Connection at 19,200 bps
16	15	CONNECT 7200*	Connection at 7200 bps
17	17	CONNECT 16800*	Connection at 16,800 bps
19	1	CONNECT 300*	Connection at 300 bps
20	10	CONNECT 2400/ EC***	Connection at 2400 bps with error control

* Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is enabled.

** Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is set for Use_DTE_Rate. This displays the DTE data rate instead of the line rate.

*** Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is set for Add/EC. If this configuration option is set for Add/V42, MNP, then either V42b, V42, MNP5, MNP4, MNP3, MNP2, or NoEC appears.

**Table B-1
(2 of 2)
Result Codes**

Numbers (1)	Numbers (2)	Word	Description
21	11	CONNECT 4800/ EC***	Connection at 4800 bps with error control
22	12	CONNECT 4800/ EC***	Connection at 4800 bps with error control
23	16	CONNECT 12000/ EC***	Connection at 12,000 bps with error control
24	13	CONNECT 14400/ EC***	Connection at 14,400 bps with error control
25	17	CONNECT 16800/ EC***	Connection at 16,800 bps with error control
26	15	CONNECT 7200/ EC***	Connection at 7200 bps with error control
27	5	CONNECT 1200/ EC**	Connection at 1200 bps with error control
28	28	CONNECT 38400**	Connection at 38,400 bps
29	14	CONNECT 19200/ EC***	Connection at 19,200 bps with error control
30	30	CONNECT 57600**	Connection at 57,600 bps
32	32	CONNECT 76800**	Connection at 76,800 bps
34	34	CONNECT 115200**	Connection at 115,200 bps
<p>** Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is set for Use_DTE_Rate. This displays the DTE data rate instead of the line rate.</p> <p>***Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is set for Add/EC. If this configuration option is set for Add/V42, MNP, then either V42b, V42, MNP5, MNP4, MNP3, MNP2, or NoEC appears.</p>			

Troubleshooting C

Overview	C-1
----------------	-----

Overview

This appendix points out basic problems that can occur when operating a 3800 Series modem. Use Tables C-1 through C-6 to check out these problems. If you are having data communication difficulties, such as periodic

character loss, random errors, or constant format errors, use the loopback tests described in Chapter 8, *Test Branch*. With these tests you can usually isolate the fault in your system by using the process of elimination. If problems continue to occur, contact your service representative.

Table C-1
Modem Health

Symptom	Action
Modem did not pass power-up self-test	Contact your service representative.
Power LED does not light LCD does not display	Make sure the modem's ON/Off switch is in the ON position. Make sure the ac power transformer is connected to the ac power receptacle. If Power LED and/or LCD do not operate, contact your service representative.
A problem is suspected after the power-up self-test	Perform a self-test via the modem's DCP or type AT&T9 if using AT commands. Perform a local analog loopback with a Pattern test. If the modem consistently registers errors, contact your service representative. If the modem passes the above tests and a problem still exists, then the problem is likely not with your modem.

Table C-2
Modem – DTE Connection

Symptom	Action
Modem does not accept or echo back AT commands	<p>Verify that the cable between the Async port of the DTE and the modem is a standard RS-232 cable. If the cable is bad, replace it. (Null modem cables, also known as crossover cables, do not work in this application.)</p> <p>Verify that the Command Echo Character configuration option is enabled. Refer to <i>Line Dialer</i> in Chapter 9, <i>Configure Branch</i>, or ATE command.)</p> <p>Verify that the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set to AT. Refer to <i>DTE Dialer</i> in Chapter 9, <i>Configure Branch</i>, or the AT&M or AT&Q command in Chapter 14.</p> <p>Verify that the Result Codes configuration option is enabled. Refer to <i>DTE Dialer</i> in Chapter 9, or the ATQ command in Chapter 14.</p> <p>Reload the Async Dial factory configuration area to guarantee that all configuration options are returned to their proper setting.</p> <p>Make sure that all AT commands are terminated with a carriage return.</p> <p>Verify that the ASCII value of a carriage return matches what is used by the DTE and the modem. Refer to <i>DTE Dialer</i> in Chapter 9 or the S3 register in Chapter 14. Verify that the DTE has a valid character format. Valid format consists of 8 data bits with no parity or 7 data bits with even, odd, mark or space parity.</p> <p>Verify that the DTE's data rate (57,600 bps–300 bps) is supported by the modem. Refer to Async DTE Rate configuration option in the <i>DTE Interface</i> section of Chapter 9.</p> <p>If using a PC, verify that the modem is attached to the correct communications port.</p>

Table C-3
(1 of 2)
Modem – VF Connection

Symptom	Action
Modem does not receive a dial tone	<p>Attach the telephone directly to the wall outlet to verify that a dial tone exists.</p> <p>Make sure the VF line is connected to the modem's rear jack labeled Dial.</p>
Modem does not go off-hook and answer an incoming call	<p>Verify that the Auto-Answer Ring Count configuration option (S-register 0) is set to a value other than 0 (disable).</p> <p>Verify that the DTE is providing DTR to the modem.</p> <p>If the DTE does not provide DTR to the modem, verify that the modem's DTR Action configuration option is set for Ignore. Refer to the <i>DTE Dialer</i> section of Chapter 9.</p> <p>Verify that all cables are attached to the correct connectors on the rear of the modem.</p>
Modem goes off-hook, answers, but does not connect	<p>Perform a Local Analog Loopback test and verify that data entered at the DTE is echoed back to the DTE.</p> <p>Verify that the originating modem is compatible.</p> <p>Verify that originating modem recognizes your modem's answer tone.</p> <p>Verify that originating modem supports your modem's modulation schemes. The 3800 Series modem recognizes CCITT V.32bis, V.32, V.22bis, V.22, V.21, Bell 212A, and Bell 103J. The 3800 Series modem does not support other vendors' proprietary modulation schemes.</p> <p>Force your modem to operate at the same modulation scheme as the originating modem to see if they connect.</p>

**Table C-3
(2 of 2)
Modem – VF Connection**

Symptom	Action
Originate Mode	Verify that the modem's DTE Dialer configuration option is set to the correct setting: either AT, DTR Dialing, V.25bis Async, V.25bis Bisync, or V.25bis HDLC.
Modem does not go off-hook and begin dialing	<p>If using AT Dialing, refer to the Table C-2, Modem – DTE Connection.</p> <p>If using DTR Dialing, verify the telephone number stored in directory location 1, and verify that the DTE is raising DTR from Off to ON to initiate a dial.</p> <p>If using V.25bis Async, verify that the correct character format is set to 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit, and the carriage return and line feed are used as command terminators.</p> <p>If using V.25bis Bisync, verify that the correct character format uses two synchronous control characters and a start-of-text control character before the text block and an end-of-text control character after the text block.</p> <p>If using V.25bis HDLC, verify that the correct character format uses flag, address, and control characters before the text block and a frame sequence check and flag after the text block.</p>
Modem dials but does not connect	<p>If the modem is operating behind a PBX, verify if a 9 and comma are needed before the telephone number.</p> <p>Verify whether Tone or Pulse dialing is needed.</p> <p>Verify if one modem is configured for Error Control or Disconnect and the other modem is configured for no Error Control. Try calling in Buffer mode.</p> <p>If both modems use V.32bis or V.32 modulation, set the modem's V.32bis Train configuration option to Long.</p>
Intermittent disconnects, high error rates, or excessive retransmissions	Perform an End-to-End test. Refer to the <i>Pattern</i> section of Chapter 8, <i>Test Branch</i> .
Modem establishes and disconnects a call	<p>You may have a poor VF connection. Disconnect and dial again.</p> <p>The remote modem may have encountered an EC Disconnect, where the modem is configured to establish a call using error correction. If the modems cannot negotiate EC, then a disconnect occurs.</p> <p>The remote modem may be in a forced Error Control mode (disconnect if there is no error control). Reconfigure your modem to V.42/MNP or Buffer and try again.</p> <p>Check the LCD to verify the reason for disconnect.</p> <p>Perform a Local Analog Loopback test.</p>
High error rates occur when running a local loopback or self-test	Incoming rings can cause data errors during a loopback test. Abort the test, disconnect the modular VF cord, and restart the test.

Table C-4
Online Operation

Symptom	Action
Data scrambled	Verify that the character format (data bits, parity, and stop bits) is set to the same value in both modems.
Missing data during a transfer	Verify that you are using the same method of flow control for both the modem and the DTE. If using XON/XOFF flow control, verify that the modem's parity matches the DTE's parity.

Table C-5
Leased-Line Operation

Symptom	Action
Modems do not train-up on leased lines	Verify that the correct cabling is used for your application. Verify that one modem is configured for Answer mode and the other is configured for Originate mode. Verify that both modems are using the same modulation scheme. Verify that modems are configured for the appropriate leased-line mode. For example, if you have a 4-wire leased line, then the modems must be configured for 4-wire operation.
Modems are configured for dial backup, but do not switch to dial lines if leased lines fail	Verify that both modems have the Auto Dial Backup configuration option enabled.

Table C-6
Dial Backup Operation

Symptom	Action
Dial backup line is present, but cannot connect	Verify that the correct telephone number for the remote modem is stored in directory location 1. Verify that one modem has the Auto Dial Backup configuration option set for Disable and the other has it set to Enable.
Modem does not switch back to leased-line operation	Verify that the Auto Dial Standby configuration option is enabled.

Technical Specifications D

Technical Specifications	D-1
--------------------------------	-----

Technical Specifications

Table D-1 shows the technical specifications for the 3800 Series modems.

Table D-1
(1 of 4)
Technical Specifications for 3800 Series Modems

Specifications	Description
APPROVALS (115 Vac, 60 Hz only)	
FCC Part 15	Class A
FCC Part 68	Registration Number: (See label on modem.)
UL	
Model 3810 and Model 3820	Listed to UL 1950
COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier	Recognized to UL 478
CSA	
Model 3810 and Model 3820	Certified to CSA C22.2 No. 950
COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier	Certified to CSA C22.2 No. 950
DOC	
Model 3810 and Model 3820	Certification Number: (See label on modem.)
Model 3811	Certification Number: (See label on modem.)

Table D-1
(2 of 4)
Technical Specifications for 3800 Series Modems

Specifications	Description
COMPATIBILITY	<p>DIAL-LINE MODULATIONS</p> <p>V.32<i>terbo</i> (19,200, 16,800 bps) CCITT V.32bis (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800 bps) CCITT V.32 9600, 4800 bps) CCITT V.22bis (2400 bps) CCITT V.22 (1200 bps) CCITT V.21 (300 bps) Bell 212A (1200 bps) Bell 103J (300 bps)</p> <p>LEASED-LINE MODULATIONS</p> <p>V.32<i>terbo</i> (19,200, 16,800 bps) CCITT V.32bis (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800 bps) CCITT V.32 (9600, 4800 bps) CCITT V.22bis (2400 bps)</p> <p>FAX MODULATIONS (Optional)</p> <p>CCITT V.17 (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200 bps) CCITT V.29 (9600, 7200 bps) CCITT V.27 <i>ter</i> (4800, 2400 bps)</p>
ENVIRONMENT	
Operating Temperature	32°F (0°C) to 122°F (50°C)
Relative Humidity	5% to 90% (noncondensing)
Shock and Vibration	Withstands normal shipping
Storage Temperature	−4°F (−20°C) to 158°F (70°C)
DTE INTERFACE	
25-pin D-subminiature connector	EIA-232-D/CCITT V.24
25-pin D-subminiature connector	RS-366-A (Model 3811 only)
AC POWER REQUIREMENTS	115 Vac ±10%, 60 Hz
POWER CONSUMPTION	
Model 3810 and Model 3820	5.25 watts (typical, including power transformer, speaker off)
Model 3811	4.25 watts (typical, each card) Speaker consumption is approximately 1 watt at high volume.

Table D-1
(3 of 4)
Technical Specifications for 3800 Series Modems

Specifications	Description
DIMENSIONS	
Weight	2.5 pounds (1.14 kg) Model 3810 and Model 3820 (not including power transformer) 1.0 pounds (0.45 kg) Model 3811
Height	2.1 inches (5.4 cm) Model 3810 and Model 3820 7.1 inches (18.1 cm) Model 3811
Width	7.6 inches (19.4 cm) Model 3810 and Model 3820 0.9 inches (2.3 cm) Model 3811
Depth	12.1 inches (30.8 cm) Model 3810 and Model 3820 13.4 inches (34.0 cm) Model 3811
TRANSMIT LEVEL	
Dial Line	Permissive (–9 dBm) Programmable (transmit level defined by TELCO)
Leased Line	0 through –15 dBm (in 1 dBm decrements)
TELEPHONE INTERFACE	
Dial-Line Connectivity	
Models 3810 and 3820	RJ11C Permissive RJ45S Programmable
Model 3811	RJ27X Programmable 50-pin connector RJ21X Permissive 50-pin connector RJ11C Permissive Service Line

Table D-1
(4 of 4)
Technical Specifications for 3800 Series Modems

Specifications	Description
LEASED-LINE CONNECTIVITY	
Model 3810	JM8
Model 3820	6-pin center pair leased jack (Requires 125-0054-1531 for JM8 connection)
Model 3811	50-pin mass termination
VOICE FREQUENCY LINE REQUIREMENTS	2-wire dial (PSTN) or 4-wire/2-wire leased line
DATA RATES	
Dial Line	19,200, 16,800, 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400, 1200, or 300–0 bps
Leased Line	19,200, 16,800, 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800, or 2400 bps
Fax	14,400, 9600, 7200, 4800, or 2400 bps
ERROR CONTROL	CCITT V.42 MNP 4–2
DATA COMPRESSION	CCITT V.42bis MNP Class 5

Pin Assignments **E**

Overview E-1

EIA-232-D Pin Assignment E-1

EIA RS-366-A Pin Assignments E-3

VF Connector Pin Assignments E-4

Overview

This appendix lists the pin assignments for EIA-232-D, EIA RS-366-A, and VF TELCO interfaces.

EIA-232-D Pin Assignments

Table E-1 lists the EIA-232-D pin assignments for the modem.

Table E-1
EIA-232-D Pin Assignments

RS-232 Pin	Name	EIA Circuit	CCITT	Signal Source	Circuit Function
1	—	AA	101	—	Shield
2	TXD	BA	103	DTE	Transmit Data
3	RXD	BB	104	DCE	Receive Data
4	RTS	CA	105	DTE	Request-to-Send
5	CTS	CB	106	DCE	Clear-to-Send
6	DSR	CC	107	DCE	Data Set Ready
7	SG	AB	102	—	Signal Ground
8	LSD	CF	109	DCE	Line Signal Detect
9	+10V	—	—	—	Reserved for test purposes (may be used to drive one RS-232 load)
10	−10V	—	—	—	Reserved for test purposes (may be used to drive one RS-232 load)
11	—	—	—	—	Unassigned
12	CT112	CI	112	DCE	Data Signal Rate Select
13	—	—	—	—	Reserved for future function
14	—	—	—	—	Reserved for future function
15	TXC	DB	114	DCE	Transmit Clock
16	—	—	—	—	Reserved for future function
17	RXC	DD	115	DCE	Receive Clock
18	CT141	LL	141	DTE	Local Loopback
20	DTR	CD	108	DTE	Data Terminal Ready
21	CT140	RL	140	DTE	Remote Loopback
22	RI	CE	125	DCE	Ring Indicator
23	CT111	CH	111	DTE	Data Rate Selector
24	XTXC	DA	113	DTE	External Clock
25	TEST	TM	142	DCE	Test Mode

EIA RS-366-A Pin Assignments

Table E-2 lists the EIA-366-A pin assignments for the modem.

Table E-2
EIA RS-366-A Pin Assignments

RS-366-A Pin	Name	CCITT	Signal Source	Definition
2	DPR	211	DTE	Digit Present
3	ACR	205	ACE	Abandon Call and Retry
4	CRQ	202	DTE	Call Request
5	PND	210	ACE	Present Next Digit
6	PWI	213	ACE	Power Indication
7	SG	201	—	Signal Ground
13	DSC	204	ACE	Distant Station
14	NB1	206	DTE	Digital Lead (Pin 14)
15	NB2	207	DTE	Digital Lead (Pin 15)
16	NB4	208	DTE	Digital Lead (Pin 16)
17	NB8	209	DTE	Digital Lead (Pin 17)
18	RC	—	ACE	Receive Common
19	SC	—	DTE	Send Common
22	DLO	203	ACE	Data Line Occupied

VF Connector Pin Assignments

Tables E-3 and E-4 list the connector pin assignments for Model 3810 and Model 3820 modular jacks and the pin assignments for the TELCO jacks. For 2-wire leased-line connections to a JM8 network interface, an 8-position to 6-position crossover cable (see Figure E-1) must be used according to the following FCC requirements:

“The RJ series of jacks should not be used for connecting data equipment to nonswitched private line networks – specifically, the service equivalents of the pre-divestiture Series 3002 (Category II, Tariff #260) service. There is a substantial difference in transmit levels permitted in the private line service and those permitted in

the public switched network. The industry standard is now an 8-pin keyed modular jack known as the USOC JM8 (Bellcore Technical Reference: TR-EOP-000242, Issue 1, released May 1985.) When ordering the installation of the USOC JM8, specify the appropriate wiring options:

1. 2-wire operations
2. 4-wire operations w/o TEK leads
3. 4-wire operations with TEK leads

TEK leads are for loopback purposes.

A 50-pin version is being considered for multiple line connections.”

Insert the 6-position plug into the LEASED jack of your modem. Insert the 8-position plug into the leased-line network interface.

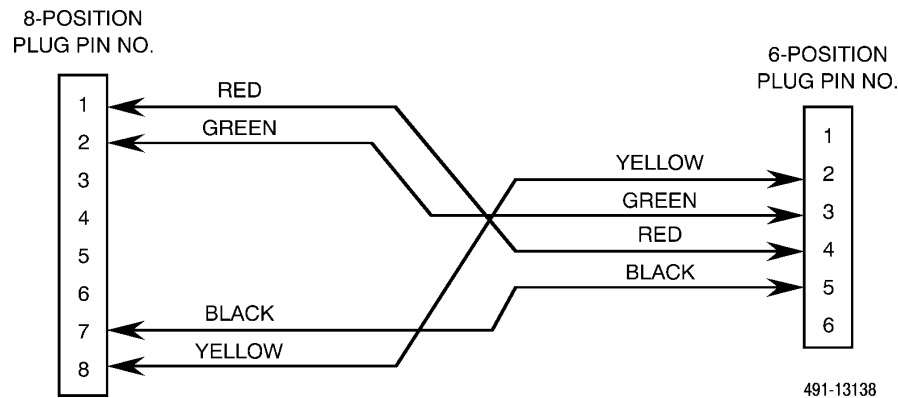


Figure E-1. Wiring Diagram – 8-Position to 6-Position Crossover Cable

Table E-3
VF Connector Pin Assignments: Models 3810 and 3820

Pin	3810 Phone/Leased Connector (J6)	3810 Dial Connector (J7)	3820 Phone Connector	3820 Dial/Leased Connector
1	4-Wire Transmit Leased Line/ 2-Wire Leased Line			
2	4-Wire Transmit Leased Line/ 2-Wire Leased Line			
3		Mode Indication		Mode Indication
4	Phone-Ring	Dial-Ring	Phone-Ring	2-Wire Leased Line/Dial-Ring
5	Phone-Tip	Dial-Tip	Phone-Tip	2-Wire Leased Line/Dial-Tip
6		Mode Indication Common		Mode Indication Common
7	4-Wire Receive Leased Line	Program Resistor		Program Resistor
8	4-Wire Receive Leased Line	Program Resistor Common		Program Resistor Common

Table E-4
VF Connector Pin Assignments: TELCO Jacks

Pin	RJ11	RJ41S	RJ45S	JM8	6-Pin Center Pair Leased
1	Not Used	Ring (Fixed Loss Loop)	Not Used	Ring 1	Not Used
2	Not Used	Tip (Fixed Loss Loop)	Not Used	Tip 1	Not Used
3	Not Used	Mode Indication	Mode Indication	Loopback Indication	Tip 1
4	Ring	Ring (Programmed)	Ring (Programmed)	Not Used	Ring
5	Tip	Tip (Programmed)	Tip (Programmed)	Not Used	Tip
6	Not Used	Mode Indication Common	Mode Indication Common	Loopback Indication	Ring 1
7	Not Used	Program Resistor	Program Resistor	Tip	Not Used
8	Not Used	Program Resistor Common	Program Resistor Common	Ring	Not Used

CCITT V.25bis Dialing Commands and Response **F**

Overview	F-1
Call Request Commands	F-2
Call Request with Number Provided (CRN)	F-2
Call Request with Stored Memory Address Provided (CRS)	F-2
Call Response	F-2
Call Failure Indication (CFI)	F-2
Call Connecting (CNX)	F-2
Call Answer Commands	F-3
Incoming Call (INC)	F-3
Disregard Incoming Call (DIC)	F-3
Connect Incoming Call (CIC)	F-3
Program Normal (PRN)	F-3
Request List of Stored Numbers (RLN)	F-3
List Stored Number Response (LSN)	F-3
Command Response	F-4
Valid (VAL)	F-4
Invalid (INV)	F-4

Overview

CCITT V.25bis is an international dialing protocol that permits direct and stored number dialing using DTEs in either Asynchronous, Bisynchronous, or HDLC operating mode. The 3800 Series modems support V.25bis request and answer commands that initiate and cancel dialing, program commands that allow you to create and enter telephone numbers to memory, and list commands that display all telephone numbers stored in directory locations. As commands are entered from the DTE, the 3800 Series modems issue a response to the DTE which indicates if the call failed or connected, or if the command is valid or invalid.

The following section discusses those V.25bis commands supported by the 3800 Series modems and the response to those commands. Tables F-1 and F-2 in the *Command Response* section list the V.25bis command and response and the analogous AT command.

NOTE

The 3800 Series modem must be configured for V.25bis dialing. Refer to DTE Dialer Type configuration option in Chapter 9, *Configure Branch*.

Call Request Commands

Call Request commands are issued from the DTE to the modem and are responsible for initiating any dial calls. Call Request commands include Call Request with Number Provided (CRN) and Call Request with Stored Memory Address Provided (CRS).

Call Request with Number Provided (CRN)

The CRN command dials the telephone number entered from the DTE. CRN is similar to the ATD command.

The CRN command format is:

CRN*n*

Where: *n* is the dial string. The following characters are permitted:

T	DTMF Dialing
P	Pulse Dialing
0–9	DTMF Tones or Pulse Dialed Digits
* # A B C D	DTMF Tones
R	Reverse Dial
:	Wait for Dial Tone
, or <	User-Defined Pause
&	Flash Hook
= or >	Delimiters

Call Request with Stored Memory Address Provided (CRS)

The CRS command dials the telephone number stored in the request directory location. CRS is similar to the ATDS command.

The CRS command format is:

CRS*x*

Where: *x* is directory location 1–10.

The modem responds to the command with either a VAL (valid) or INV (invalid) response followed by a call progress report such as connect (CNX) or failure (CFI).

Call Response

A Call Response indicates if the command was accepted by the modem. Call Response includes Call Failure Indication (CFI) and Call Connecting (CNX).

Call Failure Indication (CFI)

The CFI response is issued to the DTE if the modem fails a CRN or CRS command. CFI is similar to the AT result codes BUSY, NO ANSWER, NO CARRIER, NO DIALTONE, and ERROR.

The CFI response format is:

CFL*xx*

Where: *xx* is

ET	Engaged tone
NS	Number not stored
CB	Local DCE busy
RT	Timeout on ring tone
AB	Abort call on time-out
NT	Answer tone not detected
FC	Forbidden call

ET is similar to the Call Failure Messages, Busy Signal and Trunk Busy and the result code BUSY.

NS is similar to the Common Operational Message Invalid Number and the result code ERROR.

CB is similar to the Call Failure Messages, Dial Line in Use and No Dial-Test and the result code ERROR.

RT is similar to the Call Failure Message No Answer Tone and the result code NO CARRIER.

AB is similar to the Call Failure Messages, No Dial Tone and No Dial-DTR and the result code NO DIALTONE and ERROR.

NT is similar to the Call Failure Message No Quiet Answer and the result code NO ANSWER.

Call Connecting (CNX)

The CNX response informs the DTE that the modem has connected to the remote modem. CNX is similar to the AT result code CONNECT.

The CNX response format is CNX.

Call Answer Commands

Call Answer commands disable or enable the modem's AutoAnswer function. These commands are issued from the DTE. Call Answer commands include Incoming Call (INC), Disregard Incoming Call (DIC) and Connect Incoming Call (CIC).

Incoming Call (INC)

The INC response informs the DTE that the modem has detected a ring tone. At this point, the DTE can issue the DIC command to disable the modem from answering the call. INC is similar to the AT result code RING.

Disregard Incoming Call (DIC)

The DIC command prevents the modem from answering an incoming call. This command is only valid once the DTE receives an incoming call (INC) response from the modem. A DIC must be issued within 5 seconds after receiving an INC.

The DIC command format is DIC.

If DIC is issued within 5 seconds, the modem sends the VAL response to the DTE. If DIC is issued after 5 seconds, INV is returned.

Connect Incoming Call (CIC)

The CIC command forces the modem to cancel any DIC commands and answer an incoming call. This command is only valid when the DTE issues a DIC command. CIC must be issued within 10 seconds after sending a DIC. CIC is similar to the ATA command.

The CIC command format is CIC.

If CIC is issued within 10 seconds, the modem sends the VAL response to the DTE. If CIC is issued after 10 seconds, INV is returned.

Program Normal (PRN)

The Program Normal (PRN) command allows the DTE to enter and store a telephone number to a specific directory location. PRN is similar to the AT&Z command.

The PRN command format is:

PRNx;n

Where: *x* is the directory location 1–10.
n is the telephone number.

Request List of Stored Numbers (RLN)

The Request List of Stored Numbers (RLN) command displays telephone numbers stored in the modem's directory location. If the RLN command is entered without specifying a directory location, then all directory locations and telephone numbers are displayed. If a directory location is entered, then only that telephone number are displayed.

The RLN command format is:

RLN

which displays all directory locations,

or

RLNx

Where: *x* is a directory location.

List Stored Number Response (LSN)

LSN is a response to an RLN command issued by the DTE. If a directory location is specified, then the telephone number for that location is displayed. If no directory location is specified, then all telephone numbers stored in memory are displayed.

The LSN response format is:

LSNx;n

Where: *x* is the directory location.
n is the telephone number.

Command Response

A Command Response indicates that the command entered was a valid or invalid entry. Command Response includes Valid (VAL) and Invalid (INV).

Valid (VAL)

The VAL response indicates that the modem has accepted the V.25bis command issued by the DTE. VAL is similar to the AT result code OK.

Invalid (INV)

The INV response indicates that the modem has received an incorrect V.25bis command from the DTE. INV is similar to the AT result code ERROR.

The INV response format is:

INVxx

Where: xx is

CU command unknown
MS message syntax error
PS parameter syntax error
PV parameter value error

Table F-1 lists V.25bis commands supported by the 3800 Series modems.

Table F-1
V.25bis Commands

V.25bis Command	Description	AT Command/ S-Register Equivalent
CALL REQUEST COMMANDS		
CRN	Call Request with Number Provided	ATD
CRS	Call Request with Memory Address	ATDS
CALL ANSWER COMMANDS		
INC	Incoming Call Indication	RING
DIC	Disregard Incoming Call	NONE
CIC	Connect Incoming Call	ATA
PROGRAM COMMAND		
PRN	Program Normal	AT&Z
LIST REQUEST		
RLN	Request to List Stored Number	NONE

Table F-2 lists V.25bis response messages supported by the 3800 Series modems.

Table F-2
V.25bis Response Messages

V.25bis Command	Description	AT Command/ Result Code Equivalent
CALL RESPONSE		
CFI	Call Failure Indication	BUSY, NO ANSWER, NO CARRIER, NO DIAL TONE, ERROR
CNX	Call Connecting Indication	CONNECT
LIST RESPONSE		
LSN	List Stored Number	NONE
COMMAND RESPONSE		
VAL	Valid Command	OK
INV	Invalid Command	ERROR

Default Configuration Options G

Overview	G-1
----------------	-----

Overview

Table G-1 in this appendix lists all default configuration options for the four factory preset configurations. An N/A indicates that the value for this configuration option does not appear on the LCD if that factory default configuration is selected.

**Table G-1
(1 of 4)
Factory Default Configuration Options**

Configuration Option	Async Dial and UNIX Dial Default Settings	Sync Dial Default Settings	Sync Leased Answer/Originate Mode Default Settings
DTE Interface			
Async/Sync Mode	Async	Sync	Sync
Async DTE Rate	19,200 bps	N/A	N/A
# Data Bits	8	N/A	7
Parity Bit	None	N/A	Odd
# Stop Bits	1	N/A	N/A
DTR Action	Ignore	Standard RS232	Ignore
DSR Control	Forced ON	Standard RS232	Standard RS232
RTS Action	Ignore	Standard RS232	Standard RS232
CTS Control	Forced On	Standard RS232	Standard RS232
Wink When Disc	RTS/CTS Delay	0 msec	0 msec
LSD Control	Standard RS232 Wink When Disc*	Standard RS232	Standard RS232
TX Clock Source	N/A	Internal	Internal
CT111 Rate Control	Disable	Disable	Disable
* UNIX Dial default setting only.			

Table G-1
(2 of 4)
Factory Default Configuration Options

Configuration Option	Async Dial and UNIX Dial Default Settings	Sync Dial Default Settings	Sync Leased Answer/Originate Mode Default Settings
DTE DIALER			
DTE Dialer Type	AT	Disable	Disable
AT Escape Character	043 ASCII	N/A	N/A
Escape Guard Time	1sec	N/A	N/A
Break Forces Escape	Disable	N/A	N/A
Command Character Echo	Enable	N/A	N/A
Carriage Return Character	013 ASCII	N/A	N/A
Backspace Character	008 ASCII	N/A	N/A
Linefeed Character	010 ASCII	N/A	N/A
Result Codes	Enable Enable In Originate*	N/A	N/A
Extended Result Codes	Enable	N/A	N/A
Result Codes Format	Words	N/A	N/A
AT Command Mode	Normal	N/A	N/A
V.25bis Coding	N/A	N/A	N/A
V.25bis Idle Fill	N/A	N/A	N/A
V.25bis New Line Character	N/A	N/A	N/A
LINE DIALER			
Auto Answer Ring Count	1	1	1
Dialer Type	Tone	Tone	Tone
Dial Tone Detect	Enable	Enable	Enable
Blind Dial Pause	N/A	N/A	N/A
Busy Tone Detect	Enable	Enable	Enable
“,” Pause Time	2 sec	2 sec	2 sec
No Answer Timeout	45 sec	45 sec	45 sec
Fast Disconnect	Disable	Disable	Disable
Line Current Disconnect	Enable (>8 msec)	Enable (>8 msec)	Enable (>8 msec)
Long Space Disconnect	Enable	Disable	Enable
No Carrier Disconnect	5 sec	5 sec	5 sec
No Data Disconnect	60 min	60 min	60 min
Auto Make Busy (3811 only)	Disable	Disable	Disable
Make Busy via DTR	Disable	Disable	Disable
MI/MIC Dialing	Disable	Disable	Disable
*UNIX Dial default setting only.			

Table G-1
(3 of 4)
Factory Default Configuration Options

Configuration Option	Async Dial and UNIX Dial Default Settings	Sync Dial Default Settings	Sync Leased Answer/Originate Mode Default Settings
DIAL LINE			
Dial Line Rate	19200(V32t)	19200(V32t)	19200(V32t)
V.32bis Automode	Enable	Enable	N/A
V.32bis Autorate	Enable	Enable	Enable
Dial Transmit Level	Permissive –9 dBm	Permissive –9 dBm	Permissive –9 dBm
V.22bis Guard Tone	Disable	Disable	Disable
V.32bis Train	Long	Long	Long
LEASED LINE			
Leased Mode	N/A	N/A	4-wire LL Answer** 4-wire LL Orig***
Leased Line Rate	N/A	N/A	19200(V32t)
V.32bis Autorate	N/A	N/A	Enable
Leased Transmit Level	N/A	N/A	0 dBm
1800 Hz Train Tone	N/A	N/A	Disable
BdLn Auto Orig	N/A	N/A	Disable
Auto Dial Standby	N/A	N/A	Disable
Carrier On Level	N/A	N/A	–43 dBm
Fall Fwd Delay	N/A	N/A	Disable
V.42/MNP/BUFFER			
Error Control Mode	V.42/MNP or Buffer	N/A	N/A
V.42bis Compression	Enable	N/A	N/A
MNP5 Compression	Enable	N/A	N/A
EC Negotiate Buffer	Disable	N/A	N/A
EC Fallback Character	N/A	N/A	N/A
Flow Control of DTE	CTS to DTE	N/A	N/A
Flow Control of Modem	Disable	N/A	N/A
XON/XOFF Passthrough	N/A	N/A	N/A
Modem-to-Modem Flow Control	Disable	N/A	N/A
Break Buffer Control	Keep Data	N/A	N/A
Send Break Control	Data First	N/A	N/A
Buffer Disconnect Delay	10 seconds	N/A	N/A
<p>** Sync Leased Answer Mode default setting. (For the Model 3820, the default setting is 2-wire Answer.)</p> <p>***Sync Leased Originate Mode default setting. (For the Model 3820, the default setting is 2-wire Originate.)</p>			

Table G-1
(4 of 4)
Factory Default Configuration Options

Configuration Option	Async Dial and UNIX Dial Default Settings	Sync Dial Default Settings	Sync Leased Answer/Originate Mode Default Settings
TESTS			
DTE RL (CT140)	Disable	Disable	Disable
DTE LL (CT141)	Disable	Disable	Disable
Test Timeout	Disable	Disable	Disable
Receive Remote Loopback	Enable	Enable	Enable
V.54 Address	Disable	Disable	Disable
V.54 Device Type	N/A	N/A	N/A
MISC			
Straps When Disconnect	No Change	No Change	No Change
Speaker Control	On Until Carrier	On Until Carrier	On Until Carrier
Speaker Volume	Medium	Medium	Medium
Access from Remote	Enable	Enable	Enable
Remote Access Password	00000000	00000000	00000000
Directory Location Callback	Disable	Disable	Disable
Network Management Address	256	256	256
NMS Call Messages	Call Connect & Progress	Call Connect & Progress	Call Connect & Progress
Network Position	N/A	N/A	Tributary Control*
SECURITY			
Entry Wait Time	20 sec	20 sec	20 sec
VF Prompt Type	2nd Dial Tone	2nd Dial Tone	2nd Dial Tone
DTE Password Tries	1	1	1
DTE Password Termination Character	013 ASCII	013 ASCII	013 ASCII
Password Backspace Character	008 ASCII	008 ASCII	008 ASCII
Answer Security Mode	See footnote	See footnote	See footnote
Originate Security Mode	See footnote	See footnote	See footnote
NOTE: These configuration options are not changed by loading factory default configuration options.			
* Model 3811 default setting.			

Equipment List **H**

Equipment	Feature/Part Number
Model 3810 (115V)	3810-A1-001
Model 3810 (220–240V)	3810-A1-301
Model 3811	3811-B1-001
Model 3820 (115V)	3820-A1-001
Model 3820 (220–240V)	3820-A1-301
Fax Option	3800-C1-008
6-position, 4-wire modular cord, 7-foot length	125-0067-0031
8-position, 8-wire modular cord, 14-foot length	125-0053-1431
8-position to 6-position (JM8 to RJ11) crossover modular cord	125-0054-1531

Glossary

Active (Operating)	A configuration area containing configuration options currently in use by the modem. When a power cycle occurs, a reset is performed, or a save is issued using the DCP, this area is updated with the contents of Active (Saved).
Active (Saved)	A nonvolatile configuration area containing the most recently saved configuration options. Any changes made to configuration options can be saved using either the DCP's Save command or by issuing an AT&W0 command.
analog loop	See local analog loop.
analog signal	A signal, such as a voice, that varies continuously.
Answer mode	The modem is in a state where it is ready to receive an incoming call. For example, an ATA (Answer) command has been issued to place the modem into online answer mode. The modem has been forced off-hook and is generating an answer tone, beginning the handshaking process with the calling modem.
ASCII	This code (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) is a 7-bit code which establishes compatibility between data services. ASCII is the standard for data transmission over telephone lines. The ASCII code consists of 32 control characters (nondisplayed) and 96 displayed characters.
Async Dial	A factory preset configuration area containing the configuration options most often used in asynchronous dial networks.
asynchronous transmission	A data transmission that is synchronized by a transmission start bit at the beginning of a character (five to eight bits) and one or more stop bits at the end.
AT command set	A group of commands, issued from an asynchronous DTE, that allow control of the modem while in Command mode. All commands must begin with the characters AT and end with a carriage return.
AT prefix	A prefix issued before every AT command (except A/ and +++) which identifies the DTE's data rate, parity, and character length.
autobaud	Modem automatically determines the asynchronous DTE data rate when using AT commands.
automatic answer	A capability to respond to a call received over a dial line.

automatic dial backup	When leased-line operation fails, this function forces the modem to dial the telephone number stored in directory location 1; communication over the dial network continues with the remote modem. For a 3800 Series modem to perform this properly, the telephone number in directory location 1 must be the telephone number at the remote site. Also, the Auto Dial Backup configuration option in one modem must be enabled while the other modem must have the Auto Answer Ring Number configuration option enabled.
automatic dial standby	When operating in Dial Backup mode, this function forces the modem to periodically check the quality of the leased line. If the leased line is found to be at normal operating condition, the modem disconnects from the dial network and continues normal operation over the leased-line network.
backbone network	The primary route from a control modem to its first tributary when the communications network contains extended controls.
backplane	A common bus at the rear of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier connecting each circuit card slot to the SDCP and/or SDU. It also distributes low-voltage ac power to each slot.
baud	A unit of signaling speed that is equal to the number of symbols per second. This is not necessarily the same as bits per second, although the terms are frequently interchanged.
Bisync	Binary Synchronous Communications. An IBM communications protocol that has become an industry standard. It uses a defined set of control characters and control character sequences for synchronized transmission of binary-coded data between stations in a data communications system.
bit	A contraction of binary digit. A bit, which is the smallest unit of information, represents the choice between a one or a zero (sometimes called mark or space).
bps	Bits per second. Indicates the speed at which bits are transmitted across a data connection.
buffer	A storage device used to compensate for differences in the data flow rate when transmitting data from one device to another.
byte	A sequence of successive bits (usually eight) handled as a unit in data transmission.
Call Setup	Top-Level menu branch that contains all the functions necessary to dial telephone numbers stored in directory locations, answer incoming calls, disconnect calls, and save telephone numbers to directory locations.
carrier	The rack mounting that contains 17 slots: 1 control slot for an SDU and 16 modem slots. See data carrier.
carrier-mounted	A modem that is designed for installation in a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier and used at central-site operations. Up to 16 modems can be installed per carrier, with 6 carriers per cabinet.
CCITT	An advisory committee (Consultative Committee on International Telephone and Telegraph) established by the United Nations to recommend communications standards and policies.

CCITT V.17	A fax communications standard for modems operating half-duplex with synchronous data at 14,400 bps.
CCITT V.22	A standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data at 1200 bps over the dial network (PSTN).
CCITT V.22bis	A standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data at 1200 or 2400 bps over the dial network (PSTN).
CCITT V.27ter	A fax communications standard for modems operating half-duplex with synchronous data at 2400 and 4800 bps.
CCITT V.29	A fax communications standard for modems operating half-duplex with synchronous data at 7200 and 9600 bps.
CCITT V.32	A standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data at 4800 or 9600 bps on switched (dial) or leased telephone lines.
CCITT V.32bis	A standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data over dial networks (PSTN) or leased lines at 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, or 4800 bps.
CCITT V.42	CCITT standard for error control protocol.
CCITT V.42bis	CCITT standard for data compression.
CCITT V.54	CCITT standard for local and remote diagnostic loopback tests.
character	A letter, figure, number, punctuation, or other symbols.
character echo	A way to check the accuracy of data transmission by sending (displaying) all the characters being transmitted to the monitor.
circuit pack lock	A screw lock tab installed over a circuit card's latch release tab to prevent the unit from being removed without a tool. It is used on SDUs, modems, and filler panels.
Class 1 fax	A fax modem standard. Under Class 1 computer software handles most of the protocol, compression, and conversion tasks.
Class 2 fax	A fax modem standard. Under Class 2 the modem handles most of the protocol, compression, and conversion tasks as well as modulation, leaving the computer free for other work.
command line	Contains the command(s) instructing the modem to perform a function. Command lines begin with the AT prefix (unless disabled), and are executed when you press the Return key.
Command mode	One of two general modem operating modes. When in Command mode, the modem accepts commands instead of transmitting or receiving data.
configuration area	One of five areas within the Configure branch containing modem settings. Configuration areas include Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, Customer 2, and Factory.
configuration option	Modem software that sets specific operating parameters for the modem. Sometimes referred to as straps.

Configure	Top-Level menu branch that contains all the modem's configuration options.
connector	An outlet on equipment and cables that provides a connection.
CSA	Canadian Standards Association.
CTS	Clear-to-Send. A signal indicating that the modem is ready for the DTE to transmit data.
Customer 1	A user-defined configuration area containing customized configuration options for a specific application.
Customer 2	A user-defined configuration area containing customized configuration options for a specific application.
data carrier	A continuous frequency signal that can be modulated by another signal that contains information to be transmitted.
data compression	The elimination of empty fields, redundancies, and gaps in order to reduce storage capacity needs and the amount of data to be transmitted. Anything that is eliminated is restored after the data is received.
Data mode	One of two general modem operating modes. When in Data mode, the modem transmits and receives data instead of accepting commands.
DB-25 connector	A 25-pin connector that is used to connect a cable which enables communications between two devices.
dBm	A decibel referenced to one milliwatt. This unit measures relative signal power.
DCE	The equipment (Data Communications Equipment or Data Circuit Terminating Equipment) that provides the functions required to establish, maintain, and end a connection. This equipment also provides the signal conversion required for communication between the DTE and the telephone line. A modem is a DCE.
DCP	Diagnostic Control Panel. The face of the modem that continuously provides status information about the modem's operation and allows an operator to manage its operation. This is a generic term used for both the standalone and carrier-mounted models. See SDCP.
demodulation	The process of recovering data from a modulated carrier wave.
dial command modifiers	A modifier used in the dial string that instructs the modem how to process a dialed telephone number.
dial line	A communications circuit that is established by a switched circuit connection in the dial network.
dial network	See PSTN.
Dial Standby	A function available when the modem is operating in Dial Backup mode, allowing the modem to switch back to lease-line operation while still maintaining the dial-line connection.
dial string	A series of characters that consists of numbers and modifiers used to dial a telephone number.

digital signal	A signal composed of only two discrete values, representing the binary digits 0 and 1.
directory location	Nonvolatile memory that stores up to ten telephone numbers. Each directory location can have up to 40 characters entered.
DOC	Canadian Department of Communication.
download	A process that transfers modem firmware from a locally attached PC to a modem or allows the cloning of firmware from a local modem to a remote modem. Also, the process of moving data from a host computer to an attached computer.
DTE	The equipment (Data Terminal Equipment), such as a computer or terminal, that provides data in the form of digital signals.
edit area	A temporary work area used to view and change configuration options from the DCP without impacting modem operation. The edit area can be loaded from one of five configuration option areas, Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, Customer 2, or Factory.
EIA	Electronic Industries Association. This organization provides standards for the data communications industry.
EIA-232-D	An Electronic Industries Association's standard defining the 25-position interface between data terminal equipment and data communications equipment.
EIA RS-366-A	An Electronic Industries Association's standard defining the 25-position interface between data terminal equipment and data communications automatic calling equipment.
EPROM	Erasable programmable read-only memory.
error control	An algorithm used to correct data transmission errors.
escape sequence	Default setting is +++. This sequence lets you switch your modem from Data mode to Command mode.
extended result codes	An asynchronous message (in either numbers or words) that includes VF data rate and error control information the modem sends to the DTE after executing or trying to execute a command.
fax modem	A modem capable of emulating some features of a fax machine. Working under the control of fax software, a fax modem can communicate with a fax machine or with another fax modem.
fax software	A program or system of programs installed on a computer that allow a fax modem to send and receive facsimile images.
FCC	Federal Communications Commission. Board of Commissioners that regulates all interstate and foreign electrical communication systems that originate from the United States.
full-duplex	Simultaneous, two-way communications.
function key	One of three keys on the DCP that allows you to select or increment an LCD entry. Function keys are labeled F1, F2, and F3.

Group III	A fax standard that specifies a rate of transmission of about one page per minute.
half-duplex	Two-way data communications allowed in only one direction at a time.
handshaking	The exchange of predetermined codes and signals (tones) to establish a connection between two modems.
HDLC	High-Level Data Link Control. A communications protocol defined by ISO.
hidden choice indicator	A symbol appearing in the upper right-hand corner of the LCD, indicating that more selections are available than what appears on the LCD.
host	A computer attached to a network that shares its information and devices with the rest of the network.
Hz	A unit of frequency (hertz) that equals one cycle per second.
idle	A state in which the modem's operating parameters can be modified or commands can be issued to the modem using either AT commands or the DCP.
JM8	A jack used for leased-line networks. Pins 1 and 2 are the transmit pair and Pins 7 and 8 are the receive pair.
keypad	A set of seven keys surrounding the DCP's LCD. These keys are used to select configuration options and to maneuver through the DCP.
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display. A thin sandwich of two sealed glass plates containing liquid crystal material. When voltage is applied, the amount of light able to pass through the glass plates is altered so that messages may be "written" on the display.
leased line	A private line connection exclusively for the user. No dialing is necessary.
LED	Light-Emitting Diode. A light or status indicator on the DCP that glows in response to the presence of a certain condition (e.g., Alrm).
local analog loopback	The modem's transmit VF signal is looped to its receiver.
long space disconnect	A disconnect can occur if the modem receives an extended space from a remote modem; for example, when a remote modem is commanded to disconnect, it transmits a continuous space to the modem before disconnecting.
loopback test	Any test that verifies a device's integrity by connecting the device's output of one direction to the device's input of the other direction, then checking the received signal for errors.
LSD	Line Signal Detect. A signal between the DTE and modem indicating energy exists on the transmission circuit.
menu tree	The structure containing the 3800 Series menu hierarchy starting at a Top-Level menu and extending down to various modem functions.
MNP	This protocol (Microcom Networking Protocol) detects and corrects data errors caused by telephone line noise and signal distortion. MNP5 includes data compression.

modem	(Modulator/DEModulator). A device that transforms signals from digital to analog form and vice versa.
modulation	The process of varying some characteristics (usually amplitude, frequency, and/or phase) of a carrier wave to form data transmissions.
network	A communications circuit.
network address	The customer-assigned diagnostic address of a tributary modem.
NIM	Network Interface Module. The interface provided, up to two per carrier, for the public switched telephone network (PSTN) used by Model 3811 dial modems.
NMS	Network Management System. A set of diagnostic and configuration management tools for a data communication network, consisting of software programs and dedicated computer hardware.
off-hook	A telephone or modem is being used.
on-hook	A telephone or modem is not being used.
Originate mode	The modem is in a state where it is ready to transmit a call. In a dial network, it is the modem that makes the call. In a leased-line network, it is one of two sides of the network that is selected to be the originating modem.
parity	A way of checking data accuracy by counting the number of bits that have a value of one.
PBX	Telephone switching equipment (Private Branch Exchange) dedicated to one customer. A PBX connects private telephones to each other and to the public dial network.
permissive interface	A dial modem operating mode characterized by a fixed output power level of –9 dBm. It is one of two possible modes of operation for modems connected to dial lines (see programmable interface).
physical address	The diagnostic address of a control modem derived from its location in the carrier: its carrier and slot number.
power-up self-test	A test that checks most hardware components when the modem is powered-on.
product code	A three-digit code indicating the modem's highest VF data rate.
programmable interface	A dial modem operating mode characterized by an output power level (–12 to 0 dBm) set by a programming resistor in the jack. It is one of two possible modes of operation for modems connected to dial lines (see permissive interface).
protocol	The rules for timing, format, error control, and flow control during data transmission.
PSTN	Public Switched Telephone Network. A network shared among many users who can use telephones to establish connections between two points. Also known as dial network.
pulse dialing	One of two dialing methods, in which telephone numbers are sent as pulses (brief changes in voltage or current intensity) across the telephone line. Rotary telephones use pulse dialing.

register	A part of the modem's memory that contains values that determine the modem's operating characteristics.
Remote	A branch of the Top-Level menu that permits access to the DCP of another modem.
remote loopback	A test that sends a signal to the remote modem to test the local modem, the remote modem, and the circuit between them.
remote mode indicator	An inverse video that indicates the modems are operating in Remote mode.
result code	An asynchronous message (in either numbers or words) that the modem sends to the DTE after executing or trying to execute a command.
Return to Dial	A function available when in Dial Backup mode that allows the modem to switch to dial-line operation when currently on leased lines.
RJ11	A type of 6-position jack normally used with permissive dial networks and telephone sets.
RJ21	A type of 50-position jack normally used with permissive dial networks providing the appropriate conductors for up to eight telephone lines.
RJ27	A type of 50-position jack normally used with programmable dial networks providing the appropriate conductors for up to eight telephone lines.
RJ45	A type of 8-position jack normally used with programmable dial networks.
rotary	A TELCO service whereby multiple lines to a customer premise share a common telephone number.
SDCP	Shared Diagnostic Control Panel. An optional user interface similar to the front panel of a Model 3810 or 3820 modem that attaches to the front of a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. Installed at eye level into one COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, it controls and monitors modems in all the carriers in the cabinet. A single SDCP can control up to 8 carriers, with a total of 128 modems.
SDU	Shared Diagnostic Unit. A circuit card installed in Slot 0 of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier that provides an interface between an optional SDCP and/or network management and Model 3811 modems.
Select key	An SDCP key that allows the selection of a specific card slot in the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier.
serial transmission	A way of transmitting data in which bits are sent sequentially one at a time.
Shared Diagnostic Unit (SDU)	A circuit card that plugs into a dedicated slot in the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier to provide the SDCP and network management interfaces to the dial modems in the carrier. It translates the network management protocol to the devices in the carrier and routes incoming messages to the appropriate slots.
S-registers	Internal storage areas that contain information affecting the modem parameters.
Sync Dial	A factory preset configuration area containing configuration options most often used in synchronous dial networks.

synchronous transmission	Data transmission that is synchronized by timing signals. Characters are sent at a fixed rate. This type of transmission is more efficient than asynchronous transmission.
tone dialing	One of two dialing methods, in which telephone numbers are sent as tones across the telephone lines.
Top-Level menu	The very top of the menu tree that displays modem status and all Top-Level menu branches.
training	A process where two modems try to establish a connection over the VF line.
UL	Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.
UNIX Dial	A factory preset configuration area containing the configuration options most often used in a UNIX dial network.
USOC	Universal Service Ordering Codes.
VF	Voice Frequency. The part of the audio frequency range used to transmit voice sound (usually 300 Hz to 3400 Hz). This band is used by the modem for its modulated signal.
XOFF	A character that tells the DTE or modem to stop transmitting data.
XON	A character that tells the DTE or modem to start or resume transmitting data.

Index

A

- A/ (Repeat Last Command), 14-3
 - Abort (Test branch), 8-2
 - ac power
 - connection, 2-7
 - requirements, D-2
 - Access from Remote, 9-43
 - Access From Remote (S55), 14-22
 - Active (Operating) configuration area, 9-1
 - Active (Saved) configuration area, 9-1
 - Administrative Password, 12-5, 12-10
 - Answer, 5-3
 - Answer Access security, 12-2
 - Answer Access Security Mode, 9-47
 - Answer Security, 12-8
 - ARQ Window Size Increase, 14-26
 - Async Mode (&M, &Q), 14-10
 - AT Command Mode, 9-18
 - AT Command Mode (S84), 14-25
 - AT commands
 - "H (V.42bis Compression), 9-35, 14-14
 - &C (LSD Control), 9-13, 14-7
 - &D (DTR Action), 9-10, 14-7
 - &F (Factory Defaults), 14-7
 - &G (V.22bis Guard Tone), 9-27, 14-8
 - &I (Dial Transmit Level), 9-27, 14-9
 - &J (Dial Transmit Type), 9-27, 14-9
 - &L (Leased Mode), 9-29, 14-9
 - &M (Async/Sync Mode and DTE Dialer Type), 9-8, 9-15, 14-10
 - &Q (Async/Sync Mode and DTE Dialer Type), 9-8, 9-15, 14-10
 - &R (RTS Action), 9-11, 14-10
 - &S (DSR Control), 9-11, 14-10
 - &T (Test), 14-11
 - &T0 (Abort Test), 8-2
 - &T1 (Local Analog Loopback), 8-3
 - &T2 (Pattern Test), 8-7
 - &T3 (Local Digital Loopback), 8-5
 - &T4, &T5 (Receive Remote Loopback Response), 9-40
 - &T6 (Remote Digital Loopback), 8-4
 - &T9 (Self-Test), 8-2
 - &V (View Configuration Options), 14-11
 - &W (Save to Memory), 14-11
 - &X (Transmit Clock Source), 9-13, 14-11
 - &Z (Store Telephone Numbers), 5-6, 14-11
 - %A (Error Control Fallback Character), 9-36, 14-13
 - %B (Modulation/Data Rate), 14-13, 14-14–14-16
 - %C (MNP5 Compression), 9-35, 14-14
 - %R (Sets DTE Rate), 14-14
 - \A (Maximum Frame Size), 9-39, 14-12
 - \C (Error Control Negotiate Buffer), 9-36, 14-12
 - \D (CTS Control), 9-12, 14-12
 - \G (Modem-to-Modem Flow Control), 9-37, 14-12
 - \K (Break Buffer Control, Send Break Control, Break Forces Escape), 9-16, 9-38, 14-12
 - \N (Error Control Mode), 9-35, 14-12
 - \Q (Flow Control of DTE, Flow Control of Modem), 9-36, 9-37, 14-13
 - \T (No Data Disconnect Timer), 9-23, 14-13
 - \X (XON/XOFF Passthrough), 9-37, 14-13
 - A (Answer Mode), 5-3, 14-3
 - B (CCITT/Bell Mode), 14-3
 - D (Dial), 5-6, 14-3
 - DS (Dial Stored Number), 5-2, 14-4
 - E (Command Character Echo), 9-16, 14-4
 - echo, C-2
 - format, 14-3
 - H (Hook Switch Control), 5-3, 14-4
 - I (Identification), 7-3, 14-5
 - L (Speaker Volume), 9-43, 14-5
 - list of, 14-2
 - M (Speaker Control), 9-42, 14-5
 - O (Online mode), 14-5
 - Q (Result Codes), 9-17, 14-5
 - Sr? (Display S-register Value), 14-5
 - Sr=n (Change S-register), 14-5
 - using to change factory presets, 4-13
 - V (Result Codes Format), 9-18, 14-6
 - X (Extended Result Codes, Dial Tone Detect, Busy Tone Detect), 9-17, 9-20, 9-21, 14-6
 - Y (Long Space Disconnect), 9-22, 14-6
 - Z (Reset and Load Active), 14-6
- AT Escape Character, 9-16
 - Auto Dial Standby, 9-33
 - Auto Dial Standby (S47), 14-21
 - Auto Make Busy (S40), 14-19
 - Auto Originate, 14-20
 - Auto Redial, 9-32
 - Auto Redial (DTR), 14-18
 - Auto Redial (Leased Line), 14-18
 - Auto-Answer Ring Number (S0), 14-16
 - Auto-Answer Ring Count, 9-20
 - Automatic Firmware Download Center, 10-6

Automatic Make Busy, 9-24
automatic redialing, 9-19, 9-24, 9-32, 14-19
AutoSync, 14-10

B

Backspace Character, 9-17
Backspace Character (S5), 14-16
Bad Lines Auto Originate, 9-31
Bad Lines Auto Originate (S46), 14-20
Bell Mode, 14-3
Blind Dial Pause, 9-21
Blind Dial Pause (S6), 14-16
Break Buffer Control, 9-38
Break Forces Escape, 9-16
Busy Tone Detect, 9-21

C

cables
 carrier-mount, 3-2
 standalone, 2-3
Call Answer commands (V.25bis), F-3
Call Request commands (V.25bis), F-2
Call Response (V.25bis), F-2
Call Setup branch, 5-1
Carriage Return Character, 9-16
Carriage Return Character (S3), 14-16
Carrier On Level, 9-33
CCITT/Bell Mode (B), 14-3
Cellular (Mobile), 9-45
Cellular Enhancement, 9-39
Cellular Enhancements (S91), 14-26
Cellular RJ11 Adapt, 9-45
Cellular RJ11 Adapt (S93), 14-26
Change Directory, 5-5
character format, 14-2, C-4
Choose Function, 9-5
Clone to Remote, 10-4
Command Character Echo, 9-16
Command Echo (E), 14-4
command entry guidelines, 14-2
Command mode, 14-1
command responses (V.25bis), F-4
COMSPHERE 6700 Series NMS, 1-1
 connection, 2-7
configuration options, 9-7–9-47
 Dial Line, 9-26
 DTE Interface, 9-7
 editing and saving, 9-5
 error control, 9-34
 factory default, G-1
 for cellular, 14-8
 Leased Line, 9-29
 Line Dialer, 9-20
 Miscellaneous, 9-42
 saving, 14-11
 Security, 9-46

 selecting, 4-13
 Tests, 9-40
 V.42/MNP/Buffer, 9-34
 viewing, 14-11
Configure branch, 9-4
connection
 ac power, 2-7
 COMSPHERE 6700 Series NMS, 2-7
 dial network, 2-6
 dial-line, 2-6
 DTE, 2-4
 leased-line, 2-7
 telephone, 2-7
Control branch, 10-1
CT111 Rate Control, 9-14
CT111 Rate Control (S61), 14-22
CTS Control, 9-12
CTS Control (\D), 14-12
Customer configuration areas, 9-1

D

D-Lead signaling, 9-25
Data Bits, 9-8
Data mode, 14-1, 14-5
data rate (%B command), 14-13
data rate (dial line), 9-26
data rate (leased line), 9-29
DCP (Diagnostic Control Panel), 2-1
 description, 4-1
 Hidden Choice Indicators, 4-6
 keypad, 4-6
 operation, 4-6
 security access, 4-15
 shared, 4-3
 types, 4-1
 using to change factory presets, 4-13
default configuration options, 4-13, 14-7, G-1
 setting with AT commands, 4-13
 setting with DCP, 4-13
Dial, 5-2
dial backup, C-4
Dial command, 14-3
Dial Command modifiers, 14-3
 “!” (hook flash), 5-6
 “,” (pause), 5-6
 “;” (return to Command mode), 5-6
 P (Pulse dial), 5-6, 9-20, 14-3
 R (Reverse), 5-6
 T (Tone dial), 5-6, 9-20, 14-3
 W (Wait), 5-6
Dial Line Rate, 9-26, 14-19
dial network connection, 2-6
Dial Standby/Return to Dial, 5-4
Dial Stored Number (DS), 14-4
Dial Tone Detect, 9-20
Dial Transmit Level (&I), 14-9
Dial Transmit Type, 14-9
Dialer Type, 9-20
Directory Location 1 Callback, 9-43

- Directory Location 1 Callback (S67), 14-23
- disabled commands, 9-42
- Disconnect, 5-3
- display, revision, serial, model numbers, 14-5
- Download Code, 10-4
- download failure, 10-6
- download latest firmware, 10-6
- DSR Control, 9-10, 9-11
- DSR Control (&S), 14-10
- DTE connection, 2-4
- DTE Dialer Type, 9-15
- DTE Dialer Type (&M, &Q), 14-10
- DTE Interface, 9-7
- DTE LL (S52), 14-21
- DTE Local Loopback, 9-40
- DTE Rate, 9-8
 - same as VF rate, 14-26
- DTE Rate=VF Rate, 9-14
- DTE Rate=VF Rate (S90), 14-26
- DTE Remote Loopback, 9-40
- DTE RL (S51), 14-21
- DTE status, 7-4
- DTE-side password
 - backspace character, 9-47
 - number of tries, 9-46
 - termination character, 9-46
- DTR Action, 9-10
- DTR Action (&D), 14-7
- DTR Alarm Reporting, 9-44
- DTR Alarm Reporting (S77), 14-24
- DTR Auto Redial, 9-24
- DTR Cont Repeat, 9-19

E

- echo commands, 14-4
- Edit Password Table, 12-6
- Edit Strap Group, 9-5
- End (DCP option), 9-6
- Enhanced Throughput Cellular (ETC), 9-27, 14-9
 - RJ11 Cellular Adapt, 14-26
- Entry Wait Time, 9-46
- equipment
 - customer-supplied, 2-3
 - in modem package, 2-2
 - list, H-1
- Erase All Passwords, 12-11
- error control, 9-34
- Error Control Fallback Character, 9-36
- Error Control Fallback Character (%A), 14-13
- Error Control Mode, 9-34
- Error Control Mode (\N), 14-12
- Error Control Negotiate Buffer, 9-36
- Escape Character, 9-16
- escape character (S2), 14-16

- Escape Guard Time, 9-16
- Escape Guard Time (S12), 14-17
- escape sequence (+++), 14-1
- Extended Result Codes, 9-17

F

- Factory configuration area, 9-1
- factory default templates, 4-13
- Factory Defaults (&F), 14-7
- Fall Forward Delay, 9-28, 9-33
- Fast Disconnect, 9-22
- Fast Disconnect (S85), 14-25
- fax
 - modulations supported, D-2
 - operation, 13-1
 - types supported, 13-1
- features, 1-2
- firmware download, 10-6
- firmware release number, 14-5
- firmware upgrade, 10-4, 10-6
- flow control
 - DTE and modem, 14-13
 - modem-to-modem, 14-12
 - of DTE, 9-36
 - of modem, 9-37
 - XON/XOFF, 14-13
- Flow Control of DTE, 9-36
- Flow Control of Modem, 9-37
- Frame Size (\A), 14-12
- Front Panel Security Access, 4-15

H

- hang up, 14-4
- Hayes AutoSync, 14-10
- Hidden Choice Indicators, 4-6
- Hook Switch Control (H), 14-4

I

- Identity, 7-3
- installation
 - carrier-mount, 3-2
 - standalone, 2-3

K

- keypad, 4-6

L

- LCD display, 4-6
- LdEditAreafrm, 9-5
- Leased Line Carrier On Level (S48), 14-21
- Leased Line mode, 14-9
- Leased Line Rate, 9-29, 14-20
- Leased Line Transmit Level, 9-30
- Leased Mode, 9-29
- Leased TX Level (S45), 14-20
- leased-line connection, 2-7
- LEDs, 4-4
- Line Current Disconnect, 9-22
- Line Current Disconnect (S65), 14-23
- Line Dialer, 9-20
- Line Feed Character (S4), 14-16
- Linefeed Character, 9-17
- Local Analog Loop, 8-3
- Local Digital Loop, 8-5
- locking the DCP, 4-15
- Long Space Disconnect, 9-22
- Long Space Disconnect (Y), 14-6
- LSD Control (&C), 14-7

M

- Make Busy, 10-3
- Make Busy Via DTR, 9-24
- Make Busy Via DTR (S69), 14-24
- manual dialing, 6-2
- Maximum Frame Size, 9-39
- menu tree, A-1
 - overview, 4-7
 - remote, 11-3
- messages, 4-8
- MI/MIC Dialing, 9-25
- MI/MIC Dialing (S83), 14-25
- MNP5 Compression, 9-35
- MNP5 Compression (%C), 14-14
- models, 1-2
 - carrier-mounted, 3-1
 - standalone, 2-1
- Modem-to-Modem Flow Control, 9-37
- Modulation and Data Rate (%B), 14-13
- modulations supported, D-2

N

- Network Management Address, 9-44
- Network Management Address (S75), 14-24
- Network Position, 9-45
- Network Position Identification (S74), 14-24
- NMS, DTR alarm, 9-44
- NMS Call Messages, 9-44
- NMS Call Messages (S66), 14-23
- No Answer Timeout, 9-21
- No Answer Timeout (S7), 14-16
- No Carrier Disconnect, 9-23
- No Carrier Disconnect (S10), 14-17

- No Data Disconnect, 9-23
- No Data Disconnect Timer (\T), 14-13
- No Data Disconnect Trigger Signal, 9-23
- No Data Disconnect Trigger Signal (S80), 14-25
- Nxt (DCP option), 9-6

O

- Online mode, 14-5
- operating modes, 14-1
- options, 1-2
- Options (Status branch), 7-5
- Originate Access security, 12-2
- Originate Security, 9-47, 12-9

P

- Parity Bit, 9-9
- password
 - Administrative, 12-5, 12-10
 - Answer Access, 12-11
 - combination, 12-3
 - database, 12-12
 - DTE-side, 12-3
 - entry, 12-11
 - examples, 12-12
 - number of DTE password tries, 9-46
 - Originate Access, 12-12
 - Remote Access, 14-22
 - remote access, 9-43
 - Table, 12-6
 - Type, 12-7
 - VF-side, 12-2
- Password Table, 12-6
- Pattern (Test branch), 8-6
- Pause Time (for “,” dial modifier), 9-21
- Pause Time for Dial Modifier (S8), 14-17
- PBX, C-3
- pin assignments, E-1
- power-up procedure, 2-8
- primary channel, 11-2

R

- Rate Auto Originate, 9-32
- Rate Auto Originate (S36), 14-18
- Receive Buffer Disconnect Delay, 9-39
- Receive Buffer Disconnect Delay (S39), 14-19
- Receive Remote Loopback, 9-40
- Record (Status branch), 7-5
- redialing, automatic, 9-19, 9-24, 9-32, 14-19
- Remote Access Password, 9-43
- Remote Access Password (S56–S59), 14-22
- Remote branch, 11-1
- Remote Digital Loop, 8-4
- Remote Mode Indicator, 4-6
- remote modem Top-Level menu, 11-3

Repeat Last Command (A/), 14-3
 replacing modems, 2-8, 3-4
 Reset, 10-2
 Reset and Load Active (Z), 14-6
 Reset Security, 12-10
 Result Codes
 Enable/Disable, 9-17
 enable/disable, 14-5
 extended, 14-6
 format, 14-6
 list, B-1
 Result Codes Format, 9-18
 rings before answer, 14-16
 RS366A status, 7-4
 RTS Action, 9-11, 14-10
 RTS/CTS Delay, 9-12, 9-13
 RTS/CTS Delay (S26), 14-17

S

S-registers, 14-15
 change, 14-5
 display, 14-5
 format, 14-15
 S0 (Auto-Answer Ring Number), 9-20, 14-16
 S2 (AT Escape Character), 9-16, 14-16
 S3 (Carriage Return Character), 9-16, 14-16
 S4 (Line Feed Character), 9-17, 14-16
 S5 (Backspace Character), 9-17, 14-16
 S6 (Blind Dial Pause), 9-21, 14-16
 S7 (No Answer Timeout), 9-21, 14-16
 S8 (“,” Pause Time), 9-21, 14-17
 S10 (No Carrier Disconnect), 9-23, 14-17
 S12 (Escape Guard Time), 9-16, 14-17
 S18 (Test Timeout), 9-40, 14-17
 S26 (RTS/CTS Delay), 9-12, 14-17
 S34 (1800 Hz Training Tone), 14-17
 S35 (Auto Redial, Leased Line), 9-32, 14-18
 S36 (Rate Auto Originate), 9-32, 14-18
 S37 (Auto Redial, DTR), 9-24, 14-18
 S38 (DTR Cont Repeat), 9-19, 14-19
 S39 (Receive Buffer Disconnect Delay), 9-39, 14-19
 S40 (Auto Make Busy), 9-24, 14-19
 S41 (Dial Line Rate), 9-26, 14-19
 S43 (V.32bis Train), 9-28, 14-20
 S44 (Leased Line Rate), 9-29, 14-20
 S45 (Leased Line Transmit Level), 9-30, 14-20
 S46 (Bad Lines Auto Originate), 9-31, 14-20
 S47 (Auto Dial Standby), 9-33, 14-21
 S48 (Leased-Line Carrier On Level), 9-33, 14-21
 S49 (Transmit Buffer Disconnect Delay), 9-38, 14-21
 S51 (DTE Remote Loopback), 9-40, 14-21
 S52 (DTE Local Loopback), 9-40, 14-21
 S53 (V.54 Address), 9-41, 14-22
 S54 (V.54 Device Type), 9-41, 14-22
 S55 (Access from Remote), 9-43, 14-22
 S56–S59 (Remote Access Password), 9-43, 14-22
 S61 (CT111 Rate Control), 9-14, 14-22
 S62 (V.25bis Coding), 9-18, 14-23
 S63 (V.25bis Idle Character), 9-18, 14-23
 S64 (V.25bis New Line Character), 9-19, 14-23
 S65 (Line Current Disconnect), 9-22, 14-23
 S66 (NMS Call Messages), 9-44, 14-23
 S67 (Directory Location 1 Callback), 9-43, 14-23
 S69 (Make Busy Via DTR), 9-24, 14-24
 S74 (Network Position Identifier), 9-45, 14-24
 S75 (Network Management Address), 9-44, 14-24
 S76 (V.32bis Autorate), 9-27, 14-24
 S77 (DTR Alarm Reporting), 9-44, 14-24
 S78 (V.32bis Automode), 9-26, 14-24
 S80 (No Data Disconnect Trigger Signal), 9-23, 14-25
 S82 (V.32bis Autorate), 9-30, 14-25
 S83 (MI/MIC Dialing), 9-25, 14-25
 S84 (AT Command Mode), 9-18, 14-25
 S85 (Fast Disconnect), 9-22, 14-25
 S88 (Straps When Disconnected), 9-42, 14-26
 S89 (V.42 ARQ Window Size Increase), 14-26
 S90 (DTE Rate = VF Rate), 9-14, 14-26
 S91 (Cellular Enhancements), 9-39, 14-26
 S93 (Cellular RJ11 Adapt), 9-45, 14-26
 save
 configuration options, 14-11
 telephone numbers, 14-11
 SDCP (Shared Diagnostic Control Panel), 3-1
 SDU (Shared Diagnostic Unit), 3-1
 secondary channel, 11-2
 Security branch, 12-4
 Security configuration options, 9-46
 security messages, 4-12
 Self (Test branch), 8-2
 self-test, 8-2
 Send Break Control, 9-38
 serial number, 14-5
 Service Line, 10-3
 Set Access Control, 12-5
 Set Administrative Password, 12-10
 Set Answer Security, 12-8
 Set Originate Security, 12-9
 setting factory defaults, 4-13
 Speaker Control, 9-42, 10-2
 Speaker On/Off (M), 14-5
 Speaker Volume, 9-43
 Speaker Volume (L), 14-5
 status, 4-8
 Status branch, 7-2
 status indicators, 4-4
 Stop Bits, 9-9
 Store Telephone Numbers (&Z), 14-11
 Straps When Disconnected, 9-42
 Straps When Disconnected (S88), 14-26
 Sync Mode (&M, &Q), 14-10

T

- Talk mode, 6-2
- Talk/Data branch, 6-1
- technical specifications, D-1
- telephone connection, 2-7
- telephone numbers, entering, 5-5
- Test branch, 8-2
- Test Timeout, 9-40
- Test Timeout (S18), 14-17
- Tests (&T), 14-11
- top-level menu, 4-8
- Transmit Buffer Disconnect Delay, 9-38
- Transmit Buffer Disconnect Delay (S49), 14-21
- Transmit Clock Source, 9-13
- Transmit Clock Source (&X), 14-11
- transmit level, D-3
- troubleshooting, C-1

U

- unlocking the DCP, 4-15
- upgrade instructions, 10-6

V

- V.22bis Guard Tone, 9-27
- V.22bis Guard Tone (&G), 14-8
- V.25bis Autorate (S76), 14-24
- V.25bis Coding, 9-18
- V.25bis Coding (S62), 14-23
- V.25bis dialing commands and responses, F-1
- V.25bis Idle Character (S63), 14-23
- V.25bis Idle Fill, 9-18
- V.25bis New Line Character, 9-19
- V.25bis New Line Character (S64), 14-23
- V.32bis Automode, 9-26
- V.32bis Automode (S78), 14-24
- V.32bis Autorate, 9-27, 9-30
- V.32bis Autorate (S82), 14-25
- V.32bis Train, 9-28
- V.32bis Train (S43), 14-20
- V.42 ARQ Window Size Increase (S89), 14-26
- V.42bis Compression, 9-35
- V.42bis compression ("H), 14-14
- V.54 Address, 9-41
- V.54 Address (S53), 14-22
- V.54 Device Type, 9-41
- V.54 Device Type (S54), 14-22
- VF Prompt Type, 9-46
- VF rate, 14-19
- VF status, 7-2
- volume of speaker, 14-5

W

- window size, 14-26

X

- XON/XOFF flow control (\X), 14-13
- XON/XOFF Passthrough, 9-37